Palgrave Master Series

Accounting Skills

Advanced English Language
Advanced English Literature
Advanced Pure Mathematics

Arabic

Basic Management

Biology British Politics

Business Communication

Business Environment

C Programming C++ Programming

Chemistry

COBOL Programming

Communication Computing

Counselling Skills Customer Relations Database Design

Delphi Programming Desktop Publishing

Economic and Social History

Economics

Electrical Engineering

Electronic and Electrical Calculations

Electronics

English Grammar English Language English Literature

Fashion Buying and Merchandising

Management Fashion Styling

French

Geography German

Global Information Systems Human Resource Management

Information Technology

Internet Italian Iava

Management Skills Mathematics

Microsoft Office Microsoft Windows, Novell

NetWare and UNIX Modern British History Modern European History Modern United States History

Modern World History

Networks

Organisational Behaviour

Pascal and Delphi Programming

Philosophy Physics

Practical Criticism

Psychology Shakespeare Social Welfare Sociology

Spanish

Strategic Management

Statistics

Systems Analysis and Design

Theology Visual Basic World Religions

www.palgravemasterseries.com

Palgrave Master Series

Series Standing Order ISBN 0-333-69343-4

(outside North America only)

You can receive future titles in this series as they are published by placing a standing order. Please contact your bookseller or, in case of difficulty, write to us at the address below with your name and address, the title of the series and the ISBN quoted above.

Customer Services Department, Macmillan Distribution Ltd Houndmills, Basingstoke, Hampshire RG21 6XS, England

MASTERING ARABIC

JANE WIGHTWICK

Contributions and illustrations
BY
Mahmoud Gaafar

palgrave



© Jane Wightwick 1990

All rights reserved. No reproduction, copy or transmission of this publication may be made without written permission.

No paragraph of this publication may be reproduced, copied or transmitted save with written permission or in accordance with the provisions of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988, or under the terms of any licence permitting limited copying issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency, 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1P OLP.

Any person who does any unauthorised act in relation to this publication may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damages.

The author has asserted her right to be identified as the author of this work in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

Published by PALGRAVE Houndmills, Basingstoke, Hampshire RG21 6XS and 175 Fifth Avenue, New York, N. Y. 10010 Companies and representatives throughout the world

PALGRAVE is the new global academic imprint of St. Martin's Press LLC Scholarly and Reference Division and Palgrave Publishers Ltd (formerly Macmillan Press Ltd).

ISBN 0-333-49037-1

This book is printed on paper suitable for recycling and made from fully managed and sustained forest sources.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

14 13 12 11 04 03 02 01

Printed in Malaysia

DEDICATION

TO LEILA

CONTENTS

Acknowledgements	xi
Preface	xii
Introduction: How to use this book	xiii
I TEACHING UNITS	
Chapter 1 Getting started	1
1.1 Letters of the alphabet: group 1	1
1.2 Vowels	4
1.3 Joining letters: group 1	5 7
1.4 Shadda	,
Chapter 2 Putting words together	10
2.1 Letters of the alphabet: group 2	10
2.2 Joining letters: group 2	12
2.3 Long vowels	14
2.4 Putting words together	17
2.5 Simple sentences	19
2.6 Male and female	20
Chapter 3 The family	22
3.1 Letters of the alphabet: group 3	22
3.2 Joining letters: jīm, ḥā', khā' and mīm	24
3.3 Joining hā'	27
3.4 What's this?	29
3.5 The family	30
Chanton 4 John	35
Chapter 4 Jobs 4.1 Letters of the alphabet: group 4	35
4.1 Letters of the alphabet, group 4 4.2 Joining letters: group 4	37
4.2 Johnnig letters: group 4	40
4.4 Making words plural	42
4.5 Structure notes	45

Chapter 5 Describing things	48	11.4 Shapes	138
5.1 Letters of the alphabet: group 5	48	11.5 Colours	140
5.2 Joining letters: group 5	50	11.6 Structure notes	143
5.3 Signs and crosswords	52		
5.4 Describing things	54	Chapter 12 What happened yesterday?	147
5.5 Whose is it?	57	12.1 What happened yesterday?	147
5.6 Structure notes	60	12.2 Asking questions about the past	150
		12.3 Joining sentences together	156
Chapter 6 Where is it?	63	12.4 Summary of verbs in the past	157
6.1 Letters of the alphabet: group 6	63	12.5 Using a dictionary	161
6.2 Joining letters: group 6	67	12.6 Structure notes	163
6.3 Asking questions	72		
6.4 Where?	74	Chapter 13 Wish you were here	167
6.5 Structure notes	78	13.1 Plural patterns 3 and 4	167
		13.2 Numbers 11-100	170
Chapter 7 Describing places	80	13.3 What's the weather like?	172
7.1 Describing places	80	13.4 Message from London	176
7.2 Group words	83	13.5 Structure notes	178
7.3 More about plurals	84		
7.4 More about adjectives	85	Chapter 14 All the president's men	181
•		14.1 Days of the week	181
Chapter 8 Revision	90	14.2 Arabic words in English	183
•		14.3 Plural pattern 5	183
Chapter 9 Countries and people	101	14.4 What did the president do last week?	186
9.1 The Middle East	101	14.5 The cabinet	188
9.2 Geographical position	103	14.6 Word order	191
9.3 Other countries of the world	105	14.7 Structure notes	193
9.4 Nationalities	106		
		Chapter 15 Revision	198
Chapter 10 Counting things	114		
10.1 Arabic numbers 1-10	114	Chapter 16 Every day	208
10.2 Handwritten numbers	116	16.1 What's the time?	208
10.3 English words in Arabic	117	16.2 Every day	213
10.4 Counting things	118	16.3 At school	219
10.5 How much?	120	16.4 Structure notes	222
10.6 How many?	122		
10.7 Structure notes	126	Chapter 17 Eating and drinking	22 4
		17.1 At the grocer's	224
Chapter 11 Shapes and colours	130	17.2 In the restaurant	228
11.1 Arabic roots	130	17.3 Waiter!	231
11.2 Plural patterns 1 and 2	132	17.4 In the kitchen	233
11.3 What are these?	136	17.5 Structure notes	239

CONTENTS

Chapter 18 Comparing things	243
18.1 The biggest in the world	243
18.2 Comparing past and present	249
18.3 Structure notes	258
Chapter 19 Future plans	261
19.1 Months of the year	261
19.2 In the future	262
19.3 An adventure	266
19.4 Structure notes	270
Chapter 20 Revision and hints on further study	273
20.1 Revision	273
20.2 Hints on further study	278
II REFERENCE MATERIAL	
Appendix (i): The Arabic script	281
Appendix (ii): The Arabic verb	282
Appendix (iii): Months of the year	284
Appendix (iv): Plural patterns	285
Answers to exercises	287
English-Arabic glossary	345

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publishers wish to thank the following who have kindly given permission for the use of copyright material: Al-Ahram for logos *Al Ahram* in Arabic and *Al Ahram International*.

Al-Qabas Ltd for logos; Asharq Al-Awsat for material from their newspapers and logo; Otto Harrassowitz Verlag and Pitman Publishing for material from Hans Wehr, *Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic*, ed. J. Milton Cowan, Macdonald & Evans Ltd, 1980; Marriott Hotels and Resorts for a restaurant advertisement; Mars Corporate Services for material advertising Uncle Ben's Rice; Moulinex S. A. for logos; Nestlé S. A. for material advertising dried milk; Northwest Airlines Inc. for material advertising their airline.

Every effort has been made to trace all the copyright holders but if any have been inadvertently overlooked the publishers will be pleased to make the necessary arrangement at the first opportunity.

PREFACE

Writing this book has been a rewarding but chastening experience which, as a book publisher by trade, has left me feeling far more sympathetic towards authors than before I started. It has also left me with a great sense of achievement that the manuscript actually made it off the end of the typewriter.

Like most authors, I could fill ten pages with acknowledgements of help and support, but I will confine myself to the three or four people without whom...

I would like to thank, firstly, Dr Avi Shivtiel of the Department of Modern Arabic Studies, Leeds University and Dr Said Badawi of the American University in Cairo for their useful comments and suggestions which have resulted in a more coherent structure to the course; secondly, my unpaid self-access learners, Neil Selby and Bernadette el-Hadidi, who proved that the material actually worked and highlighted areas that were unclear; and lastly all at Macmillan Education, because I know what it is like never to be acknowledged!

JANE WIGHTWICK

INTRODUCTION

Arabic is spoken in over twenty countries from North-West Africa to the Arabian Gulf. This makes it one of the most widely-used languages in the world, and yet outsiders often regard it as obscure and mysterious. I have thought for some time that this perception is more the fault of the material available for learning Arabic than the complexity of the language itself. Most of the books available are designed for linguists or concentrate on only one aspect of the language – the script, for example, or the spoken language of a particular region. There is very little for the non-specialist learner who wishes to acquire a general, all-round knowledge of Arabic. *Mastering Arabic* is an attempt to fill that gap by providing anyone working alone or within a group with a lively, clear and enjoyable introduction to Arabic. When you have mastered the basics of the language, then you can go on to study a particular area in more detail if you want.

Before I go on to explain how to use this book, you should be introduced to the different kinds of Arabic that are written and spoken. These fall into three main categories:

Classical This is the language of the Qur'ān and classical literature. Its structure is similar to Modern Standard (see below) but the style and much of the vocabulary is archaic. It is easier to begin by studying Modern Standard and then progress to classical texts, if that is what you wish to do.

Modern Standard This is the universal language of the Arab World, understood by all Arabic speakers. Almost all written material is in Modern Standard as are formal TV programmes, talks etc.

Colloquials These are the spoken languages of the different regions of the Arab World. They are all more or less similar to the Modern Standard language. The colloquials vary the most in everyday words and expressions such as 'bread', 'how are you?' etc.

I have chosen to teach the Modern Standard in *Mastering Arabic* as I believe it is the best place for learners to start. This is because it is universally understood and the best medium through which to master the Arabic script. However, whenever there are dialogues or situations where the colloquial language would naturally be used, I have tried to choose vocabulary and structures that are as close to the spoken as possible. In this way, you will find that *Mastering Arabic* will enable you to understand Arabic in a variety of different situations and will act as an excellent base for expanding your knowledge of the written and spoken language.

HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

This book has two accompanying tapes and, if you have not already done so, I strongly advise you to get hold of them, unless you are studying in a group where the teacher has the tapes or you have constant access to a native speaker (although even here you will be able to study more independently if you have the tapes). Those parts of the book which are on the tapes are marked with this symbol:

When you start this book, I am assuming that you know absolutely no Arabic at all and may be working by yourself. The individual chapters vary in how they present the material but the most important thing to remember is not to try and skip anything (except perhaps the structure notes – see below). There are over 200 exercises in the book carefully designed to practise what you have learnt and prepare you for what is coming. Work your way through these as they appear in the book and you will find that the language starts to fall into place and that words and phrases are revised. Above all, be patient and do not be tempted to cut corners.

REVISION CHAPTERS

These occur at three points in the course. They will be very useful to you for assessing how well you remember what you have learnt. If you find you have problems with a particular exercise, go back and re-read the section(s) which deal(s) with that area.

STRUCTURE NOTES

These occur at the end of some chapters and contain useful additional information about the language used in the chapter. They are *not* essential to your understanding of the rest of the course but will be useful to you in recognising some of the finer points of the language when you read or hear them.

GETTING STARTED

1.1 LETTERS OF THE ALPHABET: GROUP 1

Many Arabic letters can be grouped together according to their shapes. Some are exactly the same shape but have a different number of dots above or below; others vary slightly. Look at this group of letters and listen to the tape:

	Name of letter	Pronounced
<u>•</u>	bā'	'b' as in 'bat'
<u>ت</u>	tā'	't' as in 'tap'
ث	thā'	'th' as in 'thin'
<u>ن</u>	nūn	'n' as in 'nab'
<u>ی</u>	yā'	'y' as in 'yet'

From the table you can see that bā', tā' and thā' have the same shape, but the position and the number of dots are different; whereas nūn has a slightly different shape, more circular and falling below the line. The yā' has a completely different shape, but is connected with the others, as will be shown later in the chapter.

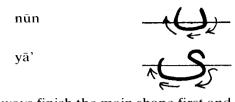
When Arabic is written by hand, the dots often become 'joined' for the sake of speed:

Printed letter	Handwritten letter
U	<u>ب</u>
ت	ت
ث	ث
ن	ن
ي	چ

Handwriting practice

(When practising handwriting, first trace the letters following the arrows, and then try writing them on lined paper.)

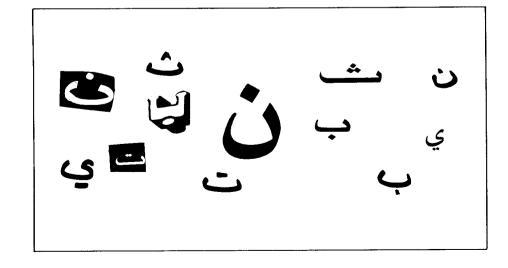
Remember that Arabic is written from *right to left*, so the letters should be formed starting from the right:



Always finish the main shape first and then add the dots:

Note: there are no capital letters in Arabic.

Exercise 1
Look at the letters below and decide which each is:

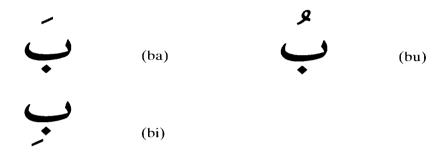


1.2 VOWELS

Like some forms of shorthand, Arabic does not include vowels in the main script. They are written above and below the letters. If you pick up a modern Arabic newspaper or novel you will only occasionally see these vowels as they are not usually written. The reader is expected to know them.

This book will begin by showing all the vowels and will gradually drop them when the word should be familiar.

Look at these letters and listen to the tape:



From this you can see:

- a dash *above* the letter (2) is pronounced as a short 'a' *following* the letter. This vowel is called 'fatha'.
- a dash *below* the letter (_) is pronounced as a short 'i' *following* the letter. This vowel is called 'kasra'.
- a comma shape *above* the letter (2) is pronounced as a short 'u' *following* the letter. This vowel is called 'damma'.

(If there is *no* vowel after the letter, a small circle ('sukūn') is written *above* the letter (2).)

Exercise 2

Listen to the tape and write the correct vowels on these letters:

Exercise 3

Now practise saying these letters with their vowels:

1.3 JOINING LETTERS: GROUP 1

Written Arabic is 'joined up'. When letters come at the end of a word they look very much like they do when standing alone. However, when they come at the beginning or in the middle of a word they get 'shortened'.

(read from right to left)

Look at how these letters combine:

Notice how the letter gets 'chopped' and loses its 'tail' when at the beginning or in the middle of a word, but still keeps its dots for recognition.

The nūn and yā' have exactly the same shape as the other letters in this group when they come at the beginning or in the middle of a word, but they retain their difference when at the end:

Handwriting practice

Notice how these letters are joined by hand:

You should finish the *whole shape* of the word and then go back to the right-hand side and add the dots from right to left.

Exercise 4

Look at the newspaper headline. Two examples of the letters in group 1 are shown. How many others can you find?

(*Note:* when yā' is by itself or at the end of a word, you may see it without the two dots.)

الكصالات ناجحة أعادت الأمور إلى طهيعتها بين السعودية والمنظمة

Exercise 5

Write out these combinations of letters. The first is an example:

We can now add vowels to the combinations of letters to make words:

$$(tub) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} = (b) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} + (tu) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}}$$

$$(bin) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} = (n) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} + (bi) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}}$$

$$(bint) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} = (t) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} + (n) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} + (bi) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}}$$

$$(bint) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} = (t) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} + (n) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} + (bi) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}}$$

$$(bint) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} = (t) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} + (bi) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} + (bi) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}}$$

$$(bint) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} = (t) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} + (bi) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}} + (bi) \quad \overset{g}{\overset{g}}$$

Notice how the sukūn (2) is not usually put on the last letter of the word. The reason for this will be explained in Chapter 4.

Exercise 6

Listen to the tape and write the vowels on these words. Each word will be repeated twice.

1.4 SHADDA

(bunn)

A shadda is a small 'w' shape (\mathcal{L}) written above the letter to show that it is doubled. For example:

+(n)

(bathth)
$$\ddot{\ddot{}}$$
 = (th) $\ddot{\ddot{}}$ + (ba) $\ddot{\dot{}}$

=(n)

You should be careful to pronounce the shadda with emphasis, otherwise you can change the meaning of the word. Listen to these examples and repeat them with the tape. Each example is given twice:

(Notice that the kasra (i) is often written below the shadda () rather than below the letter – see example 5.)

Exercise 7

Write these words and then try to pronounce them. Check your pronunciation with the tape or answer section.

$$= \dot{\mathbf{0}} + \dot{\mathbf{0}} + \dot{\mathbf{0}} = 3$$

$$= \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \dot{\mathbf{0}} + \mathbf{0} = 1$$

$$= \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} = 1$$

$$= \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} = 1$$

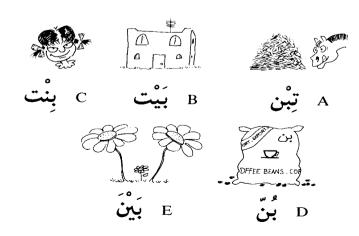
$$= \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} = 1$$

$$= \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} = 1$$

$$= \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} = 1$$

Exercise 8

Say these words and then match their meanings with the English:



1 girl/daughter 2 coffee beans 3 house 4 hay 5 between

Vocabulary in Chapter 1

Vocabulary learning

Arabic presents more difficulty than European languages to the beginner trying to learn vocabulary, as the words *and* the script are unfamiliar. One method recommended for learning vocabulary in new scripts is the 'flashcard' method, similar to the method used to teach young children how to read.

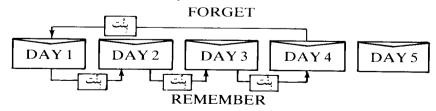
Try the following method to learn your vocabulary:

- Make a set of small cards, blank on both sides.
- Get 5 envelopes and mark them Day 1, Day 2 etc.
- Write each Arabic word with vowels on one side of a card and the English on the other:



This is good handwriting practice and will help you to remember the word. Put all the cards in the envelope marked 'Day 1'.

- Each day, take the cards out of each envelope in turn starting with 'Day 5' and put them Arabic side up. Say the Arabic aloud and then try to remember what it means. Then shuffle the cards and put them English side up, repeating the process. If you remember a word it progresses to the next envelope; if you forget, it goes back to Day 1:



If you remember a word five days running you can throw it away. (Or if you are really keen you can put it back in the Day 1 envelope without the vowels!) You can add up to 15 words a day to the Day 1 envelope.

PUTTING WORDS

TOGETHER

2.1 LETTERS OF THE ALPHABET: GROUP 2

Look at the next group of letters and listen to the tape:

	Name of letter	Pronounced
<u></u>	alif	(see sections 2.3 and 2.4)
<u> </u>	dāl	'd' as in 'dad'
<u> </u>	dhāl	'th' as in 'that'
	rā'	rolled 'r' as in Spanish 'arriva'
<u>ن</u>	zāy	'z' as in 'zone'
9	wāw	'w' as in 'wet'

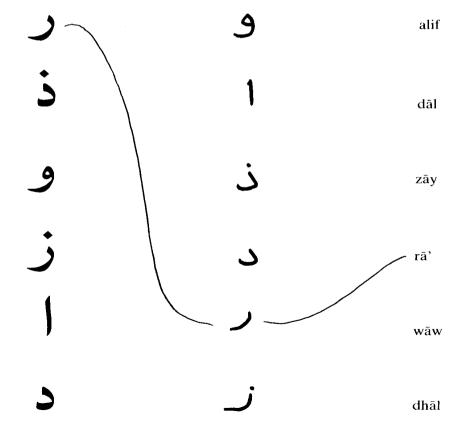
You can see that the dāl and dhāl have the same basic shape, as do rā' and zāy. The only difference is that dhāl and zāy have the dot over the basic shape. Pay special attention to the position and shape of these four letters – dāl and dhāl sit *on* the line while rā' and zāy fall *under* the line.

Waw and alif have very distinctive shapes, but their connection with the other letters in this group will become clear in section 2.2 (Joining letters).

As there are no dots to 'join up' in this group of letters, the handwritten versions tend to look very similar to the printed versions.

Exercise 1

Draw a line between the printed letters, their handwritten versions and the names of the letters, as in the example:



Handwriting practice

dāl, dhāl

alif

1 1

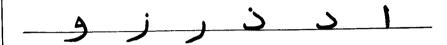
rā', zāy



wāw



Remember, finish the shape first and then add the dots:



2.2 JOINING LETTERS: GROUP 2

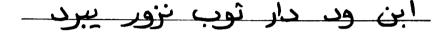
The similarity between the letters in group 2 becomes clear when we look at how they are joined to other letters. All of this group of letters are joined to the letter *before* but cannot be joined to the letter *after*. Look at how the alif joins in these combinations:

All the letters in this group are like alif and have the same basic shape wherever they appear in a word, and *always* have a space after them before the next letter.

The letters in group 2 are the only letters which cannot be joined to the letter following in a word. All other letters can be joined both sides.

Handwriting practice

Practise copying these words:



Remember, write the whole word and then add the dots.

Exercise 2

Fill in the missing letters or words, as in the example:

(bard)

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}}$$
 = (d)
 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 + (r)
 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 + (ba)
 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 1

 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 =
 +
 +
 2

 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 =
 +
 +
 3

 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 =
 +
 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 4

 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 =
 +
 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 6

 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 =
 +
 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$
 =
 +
 +
 $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$

2.3 LONG VOWELS

In Chapter 1 you met the three Arabic vowels: fatḥa (a), kasra (i) and damma (u). These are all short vowels. They can be made long by adding the three letters alif (1), yā' (ع) and wāw (ع). Look at the following and listen to the tape:

بَا	(bā)	ب	(ba)
بِي	(bī)	بِ	(bi)
بُو	(bū)	بُ	(bu)

From this you should be able to see that:

- fatha + alif = long 'a' (as in hair or as in heart)
- $-kasra + y\bar{a}' = long 'i' (as in meet)$
- $-\operatorname{damma} + \operatorname{waw} = \operatorname{long} 'u' (\operatorname{as in } \operatorname{boot})$

Now listen to the pairs of words and repeat them after the tape. Listen carefully for the difference in the short and long vowels. Each pair is repeated twice:

Notice that the sukūn (2) is not always written over the alif, yā' or wāw when they are used for forming long vowels.

It may have occurred to you that if the vowels are not usually written, then if you come across this word:

زور

... how do you know whether to pronounce it:

(All these words exist!) The answer is that you do not know automatically. However, as you learn more about the structure and vocabulary of Arabic, you will usually be able to tell from the context.

Exercise 3

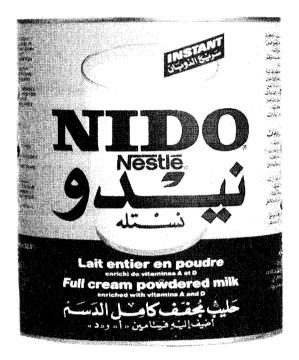
Listen to the tape and write the vowels on these words. Each word is repeated twice.

بريد	6	وزير	1
بين	7	دين	2
بين	8	دين	3
زين	9	بیت	4
وارد	10	يريد	5

Exercise 4

Now try and write the eight words you hear, with their vowels. Eachword is repeated twice.

RENAULI 3:->



Hamza with alif

Alif is unique amongst Arabic letters because it does not have a definite sound. There are two ways an alif is used:

- 1. To form a long vowel as shown in section 2.3.
- 2. To 'carry' a hamza. More details about hamza will be given in Chapter 6. For the moment it is enough to know that when a word *begins* with a hamza, then the hamza is written on or under an alif with a vowel:





('ib) إِب

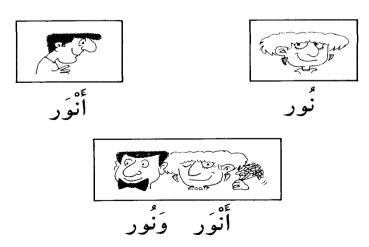
('ub) أُب

The hamza is usually written as an apostrophe in transliteration (English letters).

Listen carefully to these words which begin with hamza carried by an alif. Notice that the hamza makes the following vowel sound quite staccato. Try to copy this pronunciation.

2.4 PUTTING WORDS TOGETHER

Look at the pictures and listen to the tape.



Notice that ('and') is written as part of the word that comes after it.

Exercise 5

Now look at these pictures and read the names. Check your pronunciation with the tape or in the answer section.

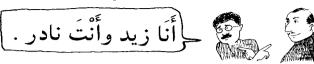


Now choose the correct description for each picture:

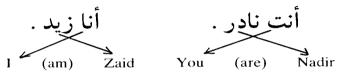


2.5 SIMPLE SENTENCES

Look at the picture and listen to the tape.

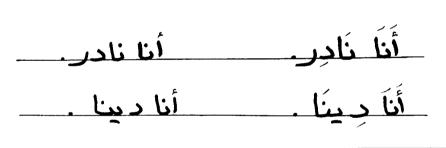


There is no verb 'to be' (am, is, are) in the present tense in Arabic. This means that you can have a sentence with no verb at all. (These sentences are called *nominal sentences*.)



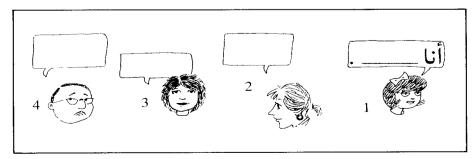
Handwriting practice

Practise writing these sentences, firstly with the vowels and then without.



Exercise 6

Look at the pictures and write sentences for each bubble:



2.6 MALE AND FEMALE

Listen to this conversation:

 \leftarrow (read from right to left)



Look at the question:

('And you?') وَأَنْت ؟

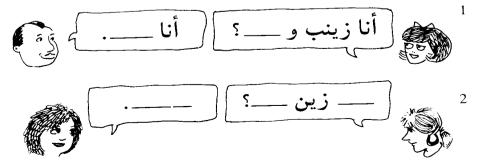
(Notice the reversed question mark.)

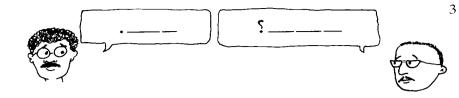
is used only to refer to a female. Arabic, like many other languages, makes a difference between male and female people and objects. It has two *genders*. So we have:

('anā) i I (male and female)
('anta) ii You (male)
('anti) You (female)

Exercise 7

Fill in the missing words in these conversations:





Vocabulary in Chapter 2

زين

('anā) I

('anta) you (male)

أنْت ('anta) you (female)

Arabic names:

Anwar (male)
اَنُوَر
Anwar (male)
اَنُور
Nur (male and female)
الله عند Badr (male)
الله Zainab (female)
الله Zaid (male)
الله Dina (female)

Zain (male and female)

THE FAMILY

3.1 LETTERS OF THE ALPHABET: GROUP 3

Look at the third group of letters and listen to the tape:

	Name of letter	Pronounced
<u>ج</u>	jīm	'j' as in French 'je'*
خ	khā'	'ch' as in Scottish 'loch'
	ḥā'	Breathy, strong 'h'
b	hā'	'h' as in 'house'
^	mīm	'm' as in 'me'

^{*} Pronounced 'g' as in 'gate' in Northern Egypt.

There is an obvious similarity between the first three letters – $j\bar{i}m$, $kh\bar{a}'$ and $h\bar{a}'$. They have exactly the same basic shape, only the dot above or below will tell you which letter it is.

The hā' and the mīm do not share their shapes with any other letters, but are included here for pronunciation and vocabulary reasons.

The pronunciation and recognition of the letters hā' and khā' can cause difficulties for foreigners as, unless you are Scottish, both will be unfamiliar sounds to your ear. Hā' is often confused with hā' in the beginning and you should be especially careful to distinguish the two sounds.

Exercise 1

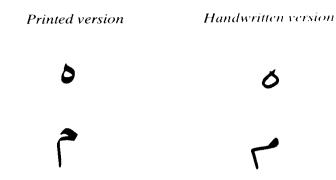
Listen to the tape and decide which is the first letter of each word. The first is an example. Each word is repeated twice.

6 خ ح ه	1 خ 🔾 ٥
7 خ ح ٥	2 خ خ ه
8 خ ح ه	3 خ ح ه
9 خ ح ۰	4 خ ح ہ
10 خ ح ه	5 خ ح ہ

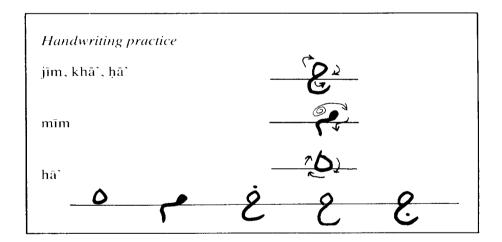
Now repeat the words after the tape.

The handwritten versions of the letters in group 3 look like this:

Printed version	Handwritten version
<u>ت</u>	2
ح	2
ح	ف



Notice how the $j\bar{i}m$, $h\bar{a}$ and khā' have more of a downwards stroke in the handwritten version, producing a triangular shape at the top of the letter.



$3.2\,$ JOINING LETTERS: jīm, ḥā', khā and mīm

When these four letters are at the beginning or in the middle of a word, the part of the letter which falls below the line (the 'tail') gets 'chopped'. Only when they occur at the end of a word do they keep their tails.

The mīm will often become 'tucked in' under other letters, so that the letter before it is slightly raised above the line. Notice these combinations of letters:

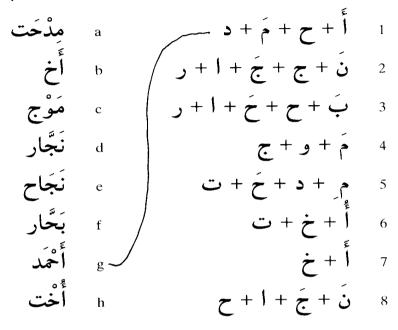
There are also two ways you could come across of joining the letters bā', tā', thā', yā' and nūn to the letters jīm, khā' and ḥā'. Thus we have:

$$| + + + + + + | + + + |$$
 ایجار $| + + + + + |$ $| + + + + |$ $| + + + + |$ $| + + + + |$ $| + + + + |$ $| + + + + |$ $| + + + |$ $| + + + |$

The first way is more common in handwriting and the second in printed letters.

Exercise 2

Join the words with the correct combinations of letters, as in the example:



Now try to pronounce the words. Check your answer with the tape or in the answer section.

Handwriting practice

Look carefully at how these letters are usually combined by hand:

start here

start here

start here

start here





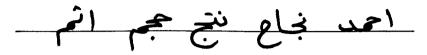




These combinations of letters can lead to a 'pile-up' effect:

You should end up back on the line when writing these combinations.

Copy these words paying special attention to the position of the word relative to the line:



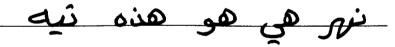
3.3 JOINING hā'

Hā' is a difficult letter to recognise as it changes its shape depending on how it is joined.

- If it is not joined to any other letter it looks like this: •
- If it is joined to letters both sides it looks like this: __ or this: __
- If it is joined only to the letter *before* it looks like this: هـ .

Handwriting practice

Copy these words:



Note: Most people prefer to handwrite the medial $h\bar{a}$ ' like this $\sqrt{}$ rather than like this $-\frac{1}{4}$.

Exercise 3

Handwrite these combinations of letters:

Feminine words

You have already seen that there are two genders in Arabic. Luckily, unlike many other languages, it is fairly easy to tell which words are masculine (male) and which are feminine (female).

There is a special feminine ending which looks like a cross between a hā' (a) and a tā' (c): a. This is called tā' marbūṭa. When the word is said by itself, the tā' marbūṭa is not pronounced:

So, there are two main categories of words which are feminine:

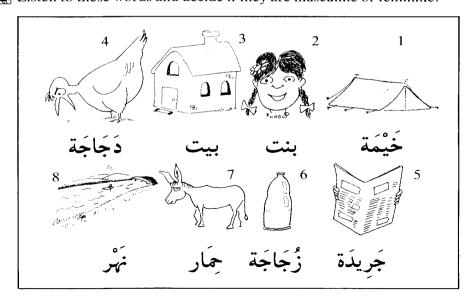
- 1. Female people or words that refer to females (girl, mother etc.). (Most countries are also considered female.)
- 2. Words that end in tā' marbūṭa. (There are a few exceptions to this but they are rare.)

A word could fall into both categories, e.g. زُوْجَة (wife). In addition, there are a number of feminine words that do not fall into either of these categories, often words connected with the natural world (wind, fire etc.) or parts of the body. Some words can even be both genders.

You should presume a word is masculine unless it falls into one of the two categories above or unless otherwise indicated.

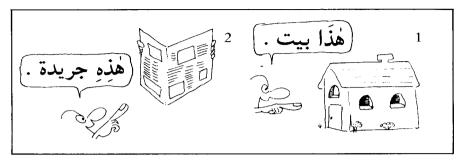
Exercise 4

Listen to these words and decide if they are masculine or feminine.



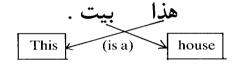
مًا هٰذَا ؟ ?3.4 WHAT'S THIS

Listen to the tape and repeat the sentences:

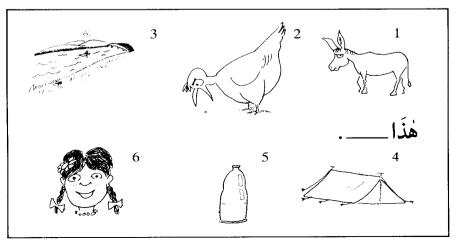


(The vertical dash above the hā' in هٰذه and هٰذه is an alif. In a very few words, the alif is written above the letter rather than after it. This alif is pronounced as a long 'a' exactly as it would be if it were written in the usual way.)

Remember that there is no verb 'to be' in the present tense. You should also have noticed that there is no equivalent of the English 'a' as in 'a house':

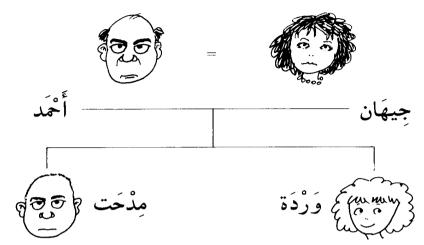


Exercise 5
Write sentences for each picture:



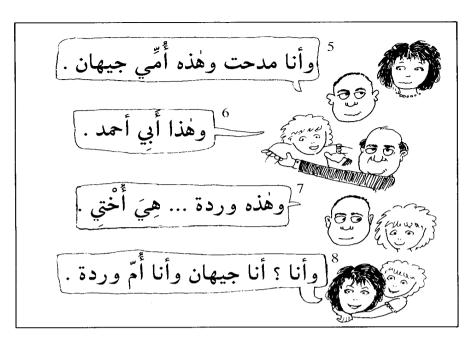
3.5 THE FAMILY

Look at this family tree and read the names.

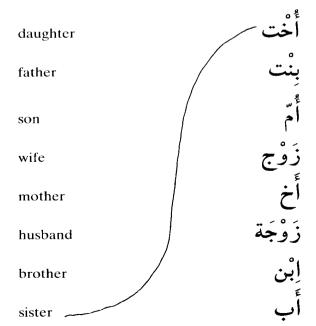


Now listen to the tape, looking at the pictures and following the words:





Exercise 6 Match the words with their translations:



Exercise 7

Now fill in the gaps in the sentences, as in the example.

We can see that:

... and that:

Putting two nouns together like this with a possessive meaning is known as $id\bar{a}fa$.

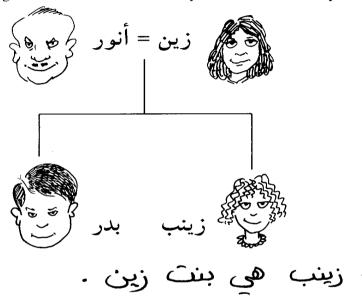
When the first noun in idafa ends in ta' marbūṭa, you should pronounce the word with a 't' at the end:

The 't' is also pronounced when you add a possessive ending like 'my':

Notice that the tā' marbūṭa is written like an ordinary tā' when anything is added to the end of the word.

Exercise 8

Now write eight sentences about this family. The first is an example:



Vocabulary in Chapter 3

أُمّ	('umm) mother	أُهُد	Ahmad (male)
أُب	('ab) father		Midhat (male)
* إبْن	(ibn) son	جِيهَان	Jihan (female)
أخ	('akh) brother	وَ [ۗ] رْدَة	Warda (female)
	('ukht) sister	هُوَ	(huwa) he (and it, masculine)
زَوْج	(zawj) husband	هِيَ	(hiya) she (and it, feminine)
زَوْجَة	(zawja) wife	؞ ۿۮٙٳ	(hādhā) this (masc.)

~	

ۿۮؚۄ	(hādhihi) this (fem.)	نهُر	(nahr) river
زُجَاجَة	(zujāja) bottle	حِمَار	(ḥimar) donkey
جَرِيدَة	(jarīda) newspaper	دَجَاجَة	(dajāja) hen/chicken
خَيْمَة	(khayma) tent		

^{*} The reason why the alif does not have a hamza will be explained in Chapter 5.

CHAPTER 4

35

JOBS

4.1 LETTERS OF THE ALPHABET: GROUP 4

Listen to the tape, paying special attention to the pronunciation of the second pair of letters.

	Name of letter	Pronounced
س	sīn	's' as in 'sea'
ش	shīn	'sh' as in 'sheet'
ص	ṣād	strong, emphatic 's'
ض	ḍād	strong, emphatic 'd'

You can see that the sīn and shīn have the same basic shape, but shīn has three dots above. Shīn and thā' are the only two letters in the Arabic alphabet to have three dots. Farsi (the language of Iran) has other letters with three dots above and below and these are occasionally used for sounds that do not exist in Arabic (especially p and v).

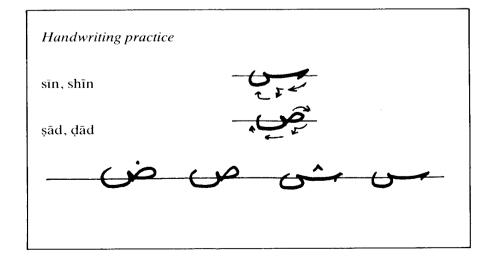
Sād and dād have the same basic shape, but dād has one dot above. All the letters in group 4 have a similarly shaped tail.

Look at the handwritten versions of the letters in group 4:

You can see that ṣād and ḍād look very similar to the printed version when handwritten, but that the 'w' shape at the beginning of sīn and shīn gets smoothed out for the sake of speed.

As with tha' (ث), the three dots on shin become joined.

The alternative handwritten versions in brackets are given so that you can recognise them. Stick to the more standard versions for the time being.

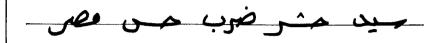


4.2 JOINING LETTERS: GROUP 4

All of the letters in group 4 work on the same principle as the other letters which have tails (e.g., \dot{z}). The tail falling below the line gets 'chopped' when the letters are joined to another following. Only when they are standing by themselves or at the end of a word do they keep their tails.

Handwriting practice			
ṣād, ḍād	– joined only to the letter after:		
	– joined both sides:	<i>e</i>	
	– joined only to the letter before:	<u> </u>	
sīn, shīn	– joined only to the letter after:		
	– joined both sides:		
	– joined only to the letter before:		

You can see that sīn and shīn just become a straight line in the middle of a word. This makes them difficult to recognise as many people elongate the lines between letters anyway. The context should help you if in doubt. Practise copying these words:



Şād and dād are emphatic letters which have no equivalent in English. It is important to distinguish between emphatic and non-emphatic letters from the beginning. Native speakers will often not recognise a word if, for example, you say sīn instead of ṣād. They may even hear a different word altogether.

Listen to these pairs of words and repeat them after the tape. Each pair is repeated twice.

Exercise 1

Listen to the words on the tape and decide which is the first letter of each. The words are repeated twice. The first answer is an example.

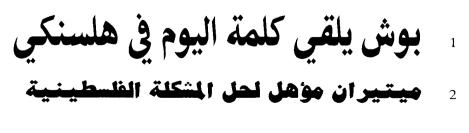
7 د ض 9 س ص 11 ه ح 8 د ض 10 س ص 12 س ص

Now check your answers and repeat the words after the tape.

Exercise 2



Now try to decide which of these people is the subject of each newspaper headline.



رسالتان من ثاتشر لأمير البحرين

4.3 **JOBS**

Listen to the tape and look at the pictures:



A word referring to a single male (masculine singular) as in picture 1 can be made to refer to a single female (feminine singular) as in picture 2 by adding a fatha (\triangle) and a tā' marbūṭa (δ).

Adding a long 'a' and a nūn (ān) to a singular word (masculine or feminine) will make it refer to two people. However, this can refer only to two people and *not more than two* as Arabic makes a difference between two (the *dual*) and more than two (the *plural*).

Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
Singular	Singular	dual	dual*
و ر بو	" _ 8	٩ - ٣ - ١	مُدَرِّسَتَان
مدرس	مدرسة	مُّدَرِّسَان	مدرستان

^{*} If there is a mixture of male and female, use the masculine.

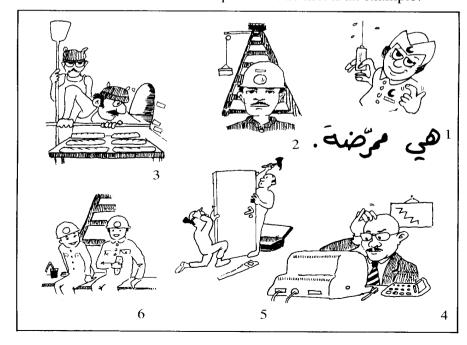
Notice that the tā marbūta is pronounced when the dual ending is added:

(mudarrisatān) مدرّستان (mudarrisatān) مدرّسة

Exercise 3 Look at this list of words and listen to the tape.

baker خَبَّازِ accountant مُحَلَّضَة nurse (feminine) مُحَرَّضَة engineer نَجَار

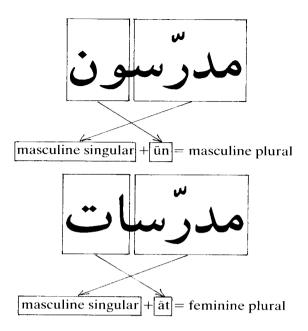
Now write sentences for each picture. The first is an example:



4.4 MAKING WORDS PLURAL

Look at the pictures and listen to the tape:





These plurals are known as the *sound masculine plural* and the *sound feminine plural*. All the jobs in this chapter can be made plural as shown above.

Notice that although there is only one word for the English 'we', there are three words for 'they':

they (masculine and feminine dual)

they (masculine plural)

they (feminine plural)

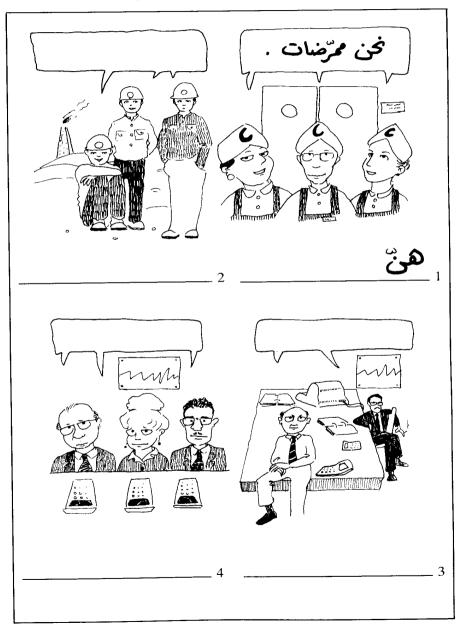
The feminine plural is relatively rare as all members of a group must be female for it to be used. If the group is mixed the masculine is always used. (Spoken dialects usually use the masculine word for 'they' to apply to females as well.)

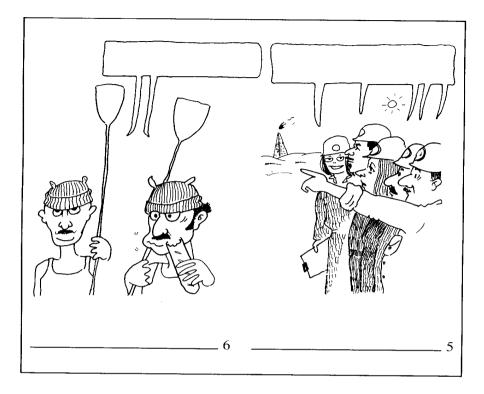
Exercise 4

Look again at the words at the top of exercise 3. Write the masculine and feminine plurals for these words.

Exercise 5

Now write the words in the speech bubbles and underneath the pictures, as in the example.





4.5 STRUCTURE NOTES

The structure note sections are intended to give the learner more information about the structure of the Arabic language. They will be useful mainly for recognition purposes and should not be slavishly learnt. Learners who require a more general understanding of Arabic can quickly skim through these sections or even skip them altogether.

Arabic nouns and adjectives have grammatical case endings. However, unlike many languages, for example German, these endings are rarely pronounced and for practical purposes do not exist in spoken dialects. So learners of Arabic (and native speakers!) can get by without knowing them at all.

The sort of situations in which you are likely to meet the full endings are readings of classical literature (particularly the Qur'ān). You will rarely find them written in modern newspapers or literature. They are sometimes used in more formal radio and TV broadcasts, especially if the speaker wishes to show his or her 'grammatical correctness'.

Having said that, there are some occasions in Modern Standard Arabic when the endings affect the pronounced part of a word and so some knowledge of how they work is desirable.

The nominative case (al rafe)

The easiest way to explain this case is to say that you can assume a noun is nominative unless there is a reason for it *not* to be. Almost all of the nouns you have met in the book so far have been in the nominative case.

If we take the noun (bint) and add the full ending for the nominative case we have:

The ending, like the vowels, is written above the final letter and consists of two dammas (4) written inside each other (4), pronounced 'un'. So the sentence:

would be...

if fully pronounced. Look at these other nouns you know with their full endings:

The nominative endings for the dual and sound masculine plural have a different pattern:

Here, the whole of the part underlined can be considered as the case ending, except the final vowel is not usually pronounced.

The existence of these case endings is the reason why nouns do not have a sukūn (2) on the last letter.

Exercise 6 (optional)

Go back to exercise 5 and write the sentences again, this time putting the full endings on the words.

Vocabulary in Chapter 4

رُبُّنُ (naḥnu) we
الْهُمَّا (humā) they (dual)
الْهُمْ (hum) they (masc.)
الْهُمْ (hunna) they (fem.)
الْهُرُّسُ (mudarris) teacher
الْهُمُّانِ (khabbāz) baker
الْهُمُّانِة (muḥāsib) accountant

مُوَّدُ (muhandis) engineer

najjār) carpenter نَجَّار

^{*} the tā' marbūṭa is pronounced if the case ending is put on the noun.

DESCRIBING THINGS

5.1 LETTERS OF THE ALPHABET: GROUP 5

Example 2 Listen to the tape and look at the letters:

	Name of letter	Pronounced
ف	fā'	'f' as in 'foot'
ق	qāf	*see below
<u>s</u>	kāf	'k' as in 'kettle'
<u>J</u>	lām	'I' as in 'lamb'

The fa' and gaf have similar shapes except the tail of the gaf is rounder and falls below the line (a little like the difference between ب and ن).

The tail of the lam must also fall below the line and not sit on it like an English '1'. Both lām and kāf have very distinctive shapes which are not shared by any other letter.

Pronunciation of qāf

Qāf is one of the most difficult letters to pronounce. You should say a 'q' from the back of your throat. In Modern Standard Arabic, care must be taken to distinguish the pronunciation of kāf and qāf (listen again to the tape).

However, spoken dialects tend to pronounce the qaf either as a 'g' as in 'gate' or as a glottal stop (a glottal stop is the sort of sound produced when you pronounce 'bottle' with a cockney accent, dropping the double 't'). This book will pronounce the gaf in the classical way but be prepared to hear the same words pronounced with a 'g' or a glottal stop by native speakers.

Exercise 1

Listen to these pairs of words. All the words begin with either qāf or kāf. Decide if each pair of words begins with the same or different letters. Each pair is repeated twice. The first answer is an example.

1 same different	5 same different
2 same different	6 same different
3 same different	7 same different
4 same different	8 same different

Look at the letters in group 5 handwritten:

Printed version	Handwritten version	
ف	ف	
ق	ق (ق	
لی	2	
J	ل	

Notice how the 'hamza' shape in the middle of the kāf can become 'joined' to the rest of the letter for the sake of speed. The alternative

handwritten version of qaf should be noted for recognition purposes, although it is generally easier for beginners to write the more standard version.

Handwriting practice	
fā'	~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~
qāf	_5
kāf	رائق
lām	-1 4

5.2 **JOINING LETTERS: GROUP 5**

Fā', qāf and lām all lose their tails when they are joined to the following letter. This leaves fā' and qāf with the same shape at the beginning or in the middle of a word. The only difference will be that fā' has one dot above and qāf two:

It is important to remember that lām can be joined *both sides*, as beginners often confuse this letter with alif, which can be joined only to the letter before:

Kāf, like hā' (a), changes its shape depending on how it is joined.

- If it stands on its own or is at the end of a word, it looks like this:
- If it stands at the beginning or in the middle of a word, it looks like this:

Exercise 2

Look at this newspaper headline. It contains 3 kāfs and 5 qāfs. Can you find them?

كلمات الرئيس مبارك الصادقة

تعكس عمق علاقات الشعبين الشقيقين

Now try to decide which Arab head of state is the subject of the headline (the answer is in the *first* line).



Handwriting Practice

When a kāf is written at the beginning or in the middle of a word, the main shape of the word is completed first without the downwards stroke of the kāf, which is added with the dots:

stage 1

حد

stage 2

کلب

Compare this with the way most English people would write the word 'tin':

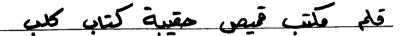
stage 1

lin

stage 2

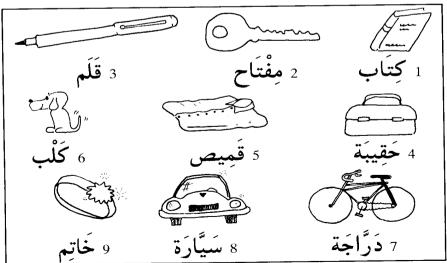
tin

Now practise copying these words:



5.3 SIGNS AND CROSSWORDS

Look at these pictures and listen to the tape:



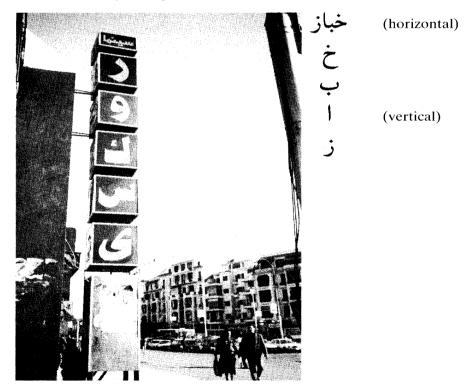
Exercise 3

Now write sentences for each picture, as in the example:

If an English word is written vertically instead of horizontally, as in a crossword or shop sign, then the same basic letters are used:

baker	(horizontal)
b	
a	
k	(vertical)
e	
r	

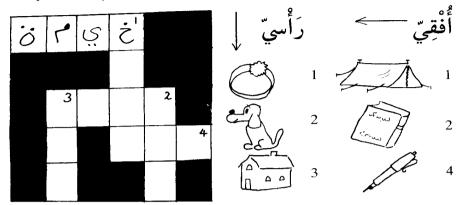
However, because of the way Arabic letters are joined, vertical words are written using the separate, isolated letters:



Crosswords are compiled entirely in separate letters.

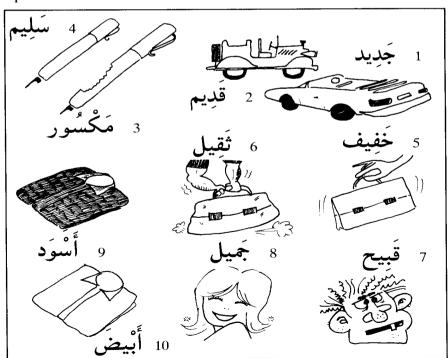
Exercise 4

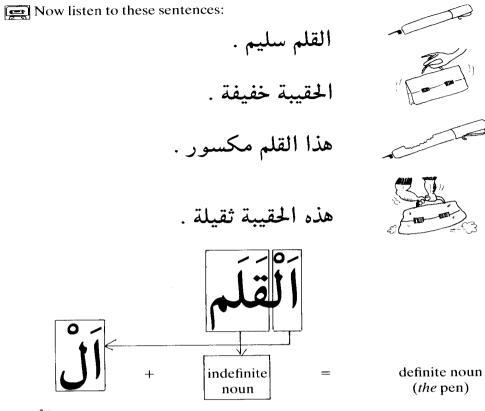
Look at the picture clues and complete the crossword. One clue is completed for you.



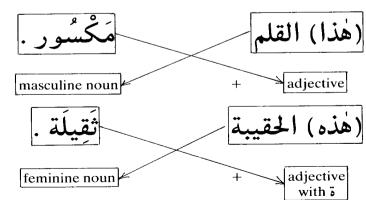
5.4 DESCRIBING THINGS

Look at these pairs of descriptive words (adjectives) and listen to the tape.





(the) is the same for all words, whether masculine, feminine or plural, and is written as part of the word that follows (like في). (ن is pronounced al, il or el in spoken dialects.)

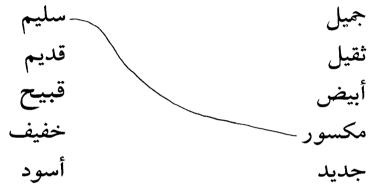


From this you can see that the adjective must have the feminine ending (3) if the noun it is describing is feminine. In other words, the adjective agrees with the noun.

Note the different between:

Exercise 5

Match the opposite pairs of adjectives:



Now write the vowels on the adjectives.

Exercise 6

Fill in the gaps in these descriptions of the other pictures in 5.4:

هذا القميص	1
وهذاأســود .	2
البنت جميــلة.	3
البنت	4
السِيّارة	5
•	6

5.5 WHOSE IS IT?

Listen to these two conversations:



*alif with 2 fatḥas (1) is pronounced 'an'

Now listen to the descriptions:

هذا كتاب البنت وكتابها جديد وأبيض.



هذا كتاب الوَلَد وكتابهُ قديم وأسود .



وهذه حقيبة المدرس وحقيبته جديدة .

Exercise 7
Fill in the missing words in this conversation and description:



You have now met the following possessive endings:

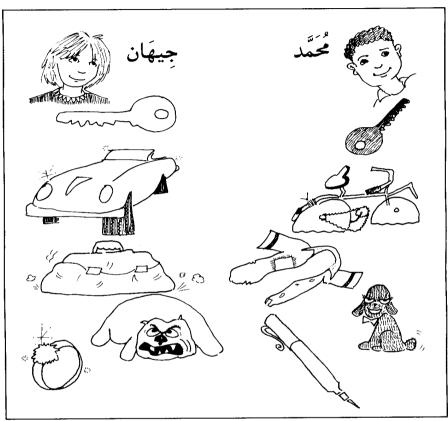
my (masculine & feminine)	-ī	كتابي
your (masculine)	-ka*	كتابك
your (feminine)	-ki*	كتابكِ
his	-hu*	كتابهُ
her	-hā	كتابها

*In spoken dialects these usually become -ak, -ik and -ū.

Remember when you add any ending to a word with tā' marbūta you must pronounce the 't':

haqībat حقيبة haqībat(u)ka

Exercise 8
Look at the pictures and read the description of Jihan's dog:



هذا كلب جيهان وهو أبيض . كلبها قبيح وثقيل .



Now write descriptions for the other pictures.

Note

Do not use أسود or أسود to describe feminine objects as they have a different feminine form which you will learn in Chapter 11. Stick to the masculine for the moment.

5.6 STRUCTURE NOTES

Indefinite and definite

When you add الله (the) to an indefinite noun, you make it definite. The case ending changes slightly:

The two dammas (2) become one (2) when the noun is definite. Nouns which have possessive endings are also definite:

So the sentences:

would be...

if the full case endings are pronounced. (Notice how adjectives also have the case endings.)

Hamzat al wasl

أَلْ begins with what is known as hamzat al wasl (the 'joining' hamza). This results in:

- 1. the hamza not being written on the alif (notice how أَلُ is written with a fatha but no hamza).
- 2. the vowel on the alif being *elided* when the word before already ends with a vowel:

There are one or two other common words that begin with hamzat al wasl besides الله One you have already met is الله (Chapter 3):

When the vowel is elided, a special symbol is put above (or below) the alif: 1.

Vocabulary in Chapter 5

قَلَم	(qalam) pen	مَكْسُور	(maksūr) broken
مِفْتَاح	(miftāḥ) key	سَلِيم	(salīm) whole/unbroken
كِتَاب	(kitāb) book	جَدِيد	(jadīd) new
قَمِيص	(qamīṣ) shirt	قَدِيم	(qadīm) old
كَلْب	(kalb) dog	خَفِيف	(khafīf) light
حَقِيبَة	(ḥaqība) bag	ثَقِيل	(thaqīl) heavy
خَاتِم	(khātim) ring	جَمِيل	(jamīl) beautiful
سَيَّارَة	(sayyāra) car	قَبِيح	(qabīḥ) ugly
دَرَّاجَة	(darrāja) bicycle	أُسْوَد	('aswad) black
وَ لَد	(walad) boy	أُبيَض	('abyaḍ) white

- ن (-ka) your (masc.) ه ... (-hu) his
- ناقی .. (-ki) your (fem.) ها .. (-ha) her
- shukran) thank you پر .. (-۱) my

WHERE IS IT?

6.1 LETTERS OF THE ALPHABET: GROUP 6

This is the final group of letters. All of these letters present pronunciation problems for the beginner, so listen carefully to the tape:

	Name of letter	Pronounced
ط	ţā'	Strong, emphatic 't'
ظ	zā'	Strong, emphatic 'z'*
ع	eayn	Guttural stop (see below)
	ghayn	'gr' pronounced from the back of the throat

^{*} Pronounced as a dad (ض) in many spoken dialects.

You can see that the tā' and zā' share the same basic shape, and gayn and ghayn also share the same basic shape. A single dot distinguishes each pair.

Emphatic letters

Altogether there are four emphatic letters which a beginner must be careful to distinguish from their non-emphatic equivalents. Listen to the tape and repeat the letters in the table below:



Emphatic	eletter	Non-empha	itic letter
ط	(ṭā')	ت	(tā')
ظ	(zā')	3	(dhāl)
ص	(ṣād)	س	(sīn)
ض	(ḍād)	٥	(dāl)

Notice that when Arabic is written in English letters (transliterated), a dot is put under the letter to show that it is emphatic.

Exercise 1



Listen to the words on the tape and decide which of the letters in the table above each word begins with. The first is an example. Each word is repeated twice.

1	ط	5
2		6
3		7
4		8

Now check your answers and repeat the words after the tape.

eayn and ghayn

These two letters, especially payn, are difficult for the beginner. However, you will develop a feel for them and will gradually find them easier to pronounce and recognise.

- ghayn ($\dot{\xi}$) is pronounced like the French 'gr' as in 'Maigret', and is similar to the noise you make when you gargle.
- payn (p) is produced by tightening your throat and making an 'ah' sound by pushing out air from your lungs – easier said than done! Imagine you are at the dentist and the drill touches a nerve. Foreigners often fail to hear gayn as a letter at all, but to native speakers it is no different from any other letter and mispronouncing it will lead to blank looks.

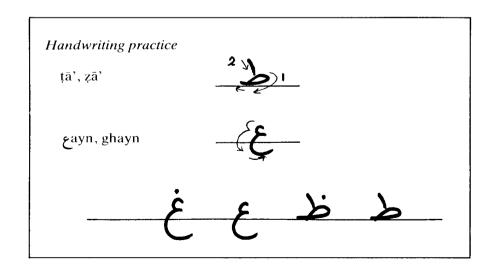
Repeat the six words that you hear on the tape. They all contain the letter ghayn.

Now repeat the next six words, which all contain the letter gayn.

Exercise 2

E Listen to the eight words that follow on the tape. Decide if the word begins with an gayn or not. The first is an example. Each word is repeated twice.

1	3	5	7
2	4	6	S.



Exercise 3

The letters have been presented according to their shapes and usages. Now look at the following table of all the Arabic letters in alphabetical order. Fill in the missing letters in the table.

	printed version	handwritten version
alif	1	١
bā'		
	ت	ث ع
jīm		
		ع
	خ	
dhāl		ک
	ر	j
sīn		<u>, </u>
	ص	•
ḍād	C	
ţā'		
	ظ	
ayn	غ	
	٤	ف
qāf		
	ڬ	
lām		
	ن	۴
hā'	•	
		و
	ي	

6.2 JOINING LETTERS: GROUP 6

țā' and zā'

These two letters have the same basic shape, wherever they appear in a word:

Handwriting practice

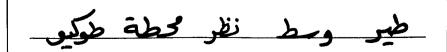
Tā' and zā' are formed a bit like ṣād and dād, except there is no 'kink' after the loop:

- joined only to the letter *after*:
- joined both sides:
- joined only to the letter *before*:

As with kaf (4), the downwards stroke is added after the whole shape of the word is complete:

stage 1: عود stage 2:

Practise copying these words:



Exercise 4

Match the Arabic newspaper titles with their English equivalents:



1 Al Ahram 2 Al-Qabas 3 Al thawra 4 Ashsharq Al-Awsat 5 Al Wafd

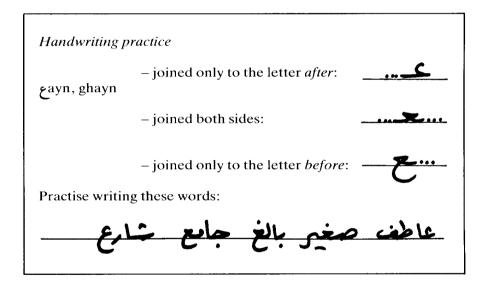
eayn and ghayn

Like $h\bar{a}'(b)$, these two letters change their shapes depending on where they appear in a word.

- joined only to the following letter they look like this: ... (like the isolated version without its tail).
- joined both sides they look like this:
- joined only to the letter before they look like this: ...

Look carefully at how these letters combine:

Notice especially that zayn or ghayn look very different at the end of a word depending on whether or not they are joined to the previous letter (see examples four and five).



Exercise 5

Handwrite these combinations of letters:

sun letter

×

Sun letters

Listen to these two sentences:

القميص أبيض . السيارة جديدة .

Notice that:

is pronounced al qamīs, but

is pronounced as sayyāra

This is because when \mathring{J} is added to some letters, the lām is pronounced like the first letter of the word and not as an 'l'. The letter 'takes over' (assimilates) the sound of the lām. When this happens the lām of \mathring{J} loses its sukūn (2) and instead a shadda (2) is written over the first letter of the word, as this is now pronounced twice:

اَلسَّيَّارَة

Letters, like sīn, which assimilate the lām of $\mathring{\mathbb{U}}$ are known as *sun letters* (the others are moon letters). All sun letters are pronounced with your tongue at the top of your mouth, just behind your teeth. This is the same position as lām. *All* of the letters in group 4 (sīn, shīn, ṣād and dād) are sun letters and *none* of the letters in group 3 (jīm, ḥā', khā', mīm and hā') are.

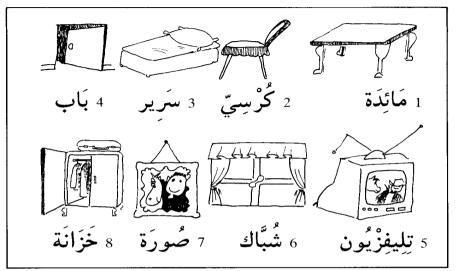
Exercise 6

Listen to these words pronounced with \mathcal{J} and decide which of the letters in groups 1, 2, 5 and 6 are sun letters. The first is an example. Each word is repeated twice:

word	initial letter
البنت	ب
التبن	ت
الثوب	
النهر	
الياسمين	
الدجاجة	
الذباب	
الراديو	
الزجاجة	
الولد	
الفيلم	
القميص	
الكتاب	
الليمون	
الطين	
الظاهر	
العرب	
الغر ب	

6.3 ASKING QUESTIONS

Look at these objects and listen to the tape:



Exercise 7

Fill in the missing words in the sentences and match them to the correct picture as in the example.

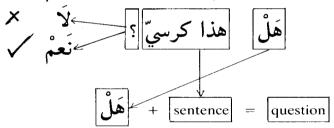


Now listen to the following conversations:

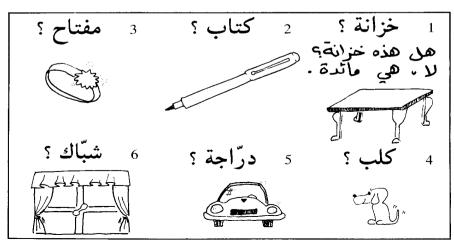




(Notice the shape of the Arabic comma: .)



Exercise 8
Now write questions and answers for these pictures, as in the example.



More about hamza

You have already met the hamza when it comes at the beginning of a word:

ب أُمّ

At the beginning, it is always written on or under ('carried by') an alif.

Hamza can also appear in the middle or at the end of a word. Then you can find it written on an alif (1), a waw (2), a ya with no dots (2)....) or on the line (2).

The rules for how to write hamza are complicated and it is best to learn each word as it appears. After a time you will begin to develop a feel for how to write it.

The hamza is pronounced as a short pause. Listen to these words with hamza and then compare them to the sound that would be made if the word did not have a hamza:

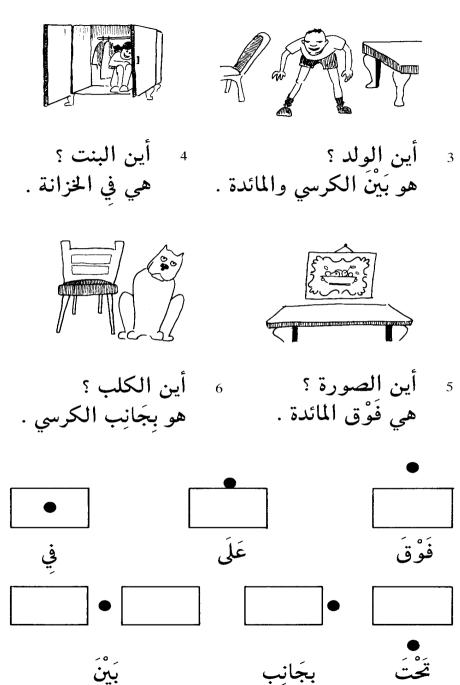
without hamza	with hamza	
رَس	رَأْس	
ء ب س	ء ہ بؤس	
صَنعا	صَنْعَاء	
1-0-	1-0-	

The hamza is considered to be a letter like any other in the Arabic alphabet. Only hamzat al waşl (see section 5.6) is not considered a letter.

6.4 WHERE? أُيْنَ ! Listen to the tape and look at the pictures:







ألف مقصورة Alif maqṣūra

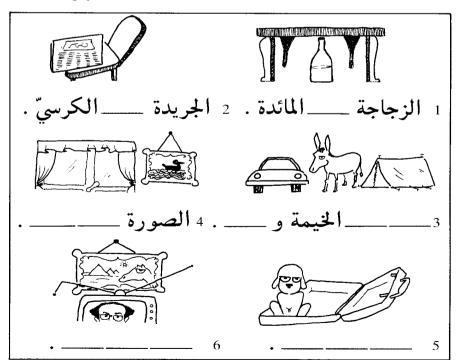
You may have noticed that the word على finishes with a yā' with no dots and yet is pronounced عاقم, ending with a long 'a'. As you know, a long 'a' would usually be written with a fatḥa and an alif:

(bāb) بَاب

(mā'ida) مائدة

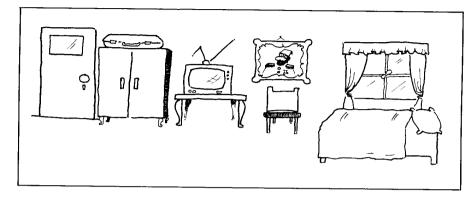
However, some words that end in a long 'a' are written with a yā' with no dots instead of an alif. This makes no difference to the pronunciation and is only ever found at the *end* of a word. It is known as *alif maqṣūra*.

Exercise 9
Fill in the gaps in these sentences:



Exercise 10

Now look at this plan of a bedroom and answer the questions, as in the example.



1 هل الكرسيّ بجانب المائدة ؟

نعم ، هو بجانب المائدة .

أَيْنَ التليفزيون ؟

3 أين المائدة ؟

4 هل الصورة بجانب الشبّاك ؟

5 أين الخزانة ؟

6 هل التليفزيون تحت الشبّاك ؟

7 أين السرير ؟

8 هل الباب بجانب المائدة ؟

و أين الحقيبة ؟

10 هل المائدة بين الكرسي والخزانة ؟

6.5 STRUCTURE NOTES

The genitive case – with prepositions.

All the words that you have met in this chapter which describe where something is are *prepositions* (e.g. غلى (in), على (on) etc.).

All nouns that follow a preposition are in the genitive case. This case is formed in a similar way to the nominative (see Chapter 4), except using kasras instead of fathas:

	nominative	genitive
	3º O	o
indefinite	(bintun) بِنت	(bintin) بِنتٍ
definite	(al bintu)	(al binti)

So the sentence:

would be, if fully vowelled:

Iḍāfa

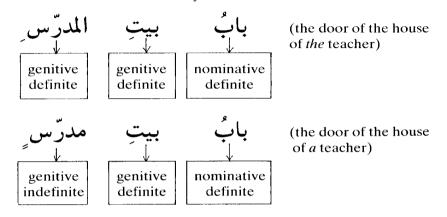
Idafa is the joining of two or more nouns to describe possession. You have already met many examples of this in Chapters 3 and 4:

An idafa can be more than two nouns together:

(Take care to notice the difference between:

If the case endings are added to an idafa there are two basic rules to remember:

- All nouns except the last one are *definite* (but they cannot have J). The last can be definite or indefinite depending on the meaning (see below).
- All nouns after the first one are in the *genitive case*. The case of the first noun will be decided by its function in the sentence.



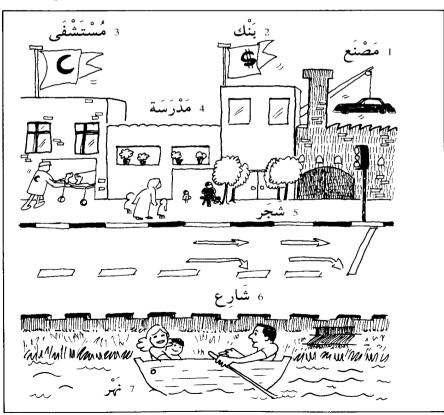
Vocabulary in Chapter 6

فِي	(fī) in	مَائِدَة	(mā'ida) table
عَلَى	(عاā) on	كرسِيّ	(kursī) chair
فَوْقَ	(fawqa) above	سَرِير	(sarīr) bed
تَحْتَ	(taḥta) below	بَاب	(bāb) door
بِجَانِب	(bijānib) beside	تِلِيفِزْيُون	(tilīfizyūn) television
بَيْنَ	(bayna) between	شُبَّاك	(shubbāk) window
		صُورَة	(ṣūra) picture
		خَزَانَة	(khazāna) cupboard
		هَلْ ؟	(hal) question word
		أَيْنَ ؟	('ayna) where?

DESCRIBING PLACES

7.1 DESCRIBING PLACES

Look at this picture of a town (مَدِينَة) and look at the labels, listening to the tape.



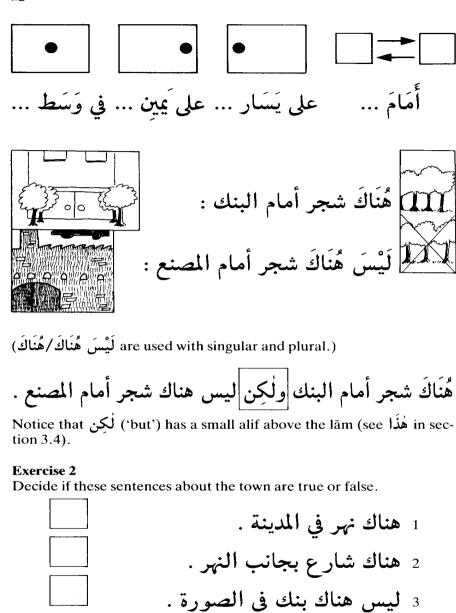
Exercise 1
Who works where?
Match the jobs with the places.

Now write sentences as in the example:

1 بدر/محاسب وهو في البندى . و زين/مدرّسة بدر محاسب وهو في البندى . 2 زينب/مرّضة 4 أحمد/مهندس

Listen to the description of the town on the previous page.

هذه صورة مدينة وهناك نهر في المدينة وبجانب النهر هناك شارع. في وسَط الصورة هناك بنك وبجانب البنك هناك مدرسة ـ المدرسة بين البنك والمستشفى. وعلى يمين البنك هناك مصنع أسود وقبيح وهو مصنع السيارات في الشارع. السيارات في الشارع. أمام البنك هناك شجر جميل ولكن ليْسَ هناك شجر أمام المصنع.



4 هناك مصنع على يين البنك .

5 هناك مستشفى بين البنك والمصنع

6 هناك ممرّضة أمام المستشفى .
7 المصنع هو مصنع السيّارات .
8 في وسط الصورة هناك مستشفى .
9 ليس هناك شجر أمام المستشفى .

Exercise 3
Write sentences for each picture as in the example:



7.2 GROUP WORDS

Some words have a plural meaning, even though they are singular. For example:

trees شجر

poultry (hens) دجاج

These words are group words (*collective nouns*). Most of these words refer to plants or animals that are naturally found together in groups.

If a tā' marbūṭa is added to the word, then it refers to only one of the group.

Exercise 4

Here are some more collective nouns. Listen to the words and then write them out again, making them refer to just one of the group:



تِين	figs
وَ رْد	roses
خَمَام	pigeons
ذُبَاب	flies
لَوْز	almonds
بَطّيخ	water melons

7.3 MORE ABOUT PLURALS

You have seen in Chapter 4 how many words which refer to people can be made plural by adding certain endings:

be made plural by adding cer	singular	plural
sound masculine plural	مدرّس	مدرسون
sound feminine plural	مدرّسة	مدرّسات

The sound masculine plural can *only* be used with some words referring to *male people*. The sound feminine plural is also used to make the plural of a number of words which are not people and which may be masculine or feminine in the singular. Here are the plurals of some words you already know:

Notice that you must remove the tā' marbūṭa, before adding the ending (-āt). There are no rules to tell you which words can be made plural this way, but many long words and words derived from other languages (for example, تليفزيون)can be made plural by adding this ending. This is because they do not fit into the other plural patterns that you will meet later in the book.

7.4 MORE ABOUT ADJECTIVES

Look at the description of the town in 7.1. Find this sentence:

Notice that the 2 adjectives come *after* the noun (and not before as they do in English). (and) can often be omitted without changing the meaning:

If you are referring to a specific factory, then you must add the) to the adjectives as well as the noun:

(If the adjectives have | Jyou can leave out the .)

You must also add $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{U}}$ to the adjective if the noun has a possessive ending:

my new bag

My new bag

his ugly white dog

This means you must take care when writing descriptions, as you can change the meaning simply by adding it:

The girl is beautiful.

the beautiful girl

a beautiful girl

Exercise 5
Put these sentences in the right order. The first is an example.

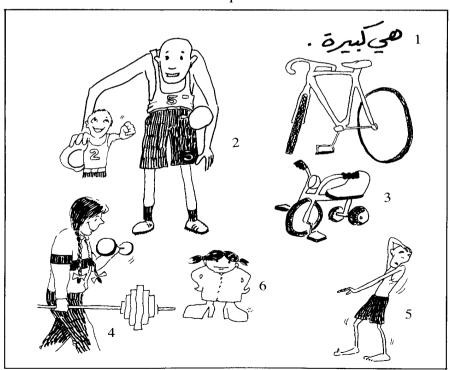
المصنع				1 جديدة
. 1	أمام المصنع	ديدة أ	تيارة ج	هناك س
على	قلم	المائدة	هناك	2 مكسور
سيّارتي	أنا	الجديدة	الجميلة	3 (في
هناك	المستشفى	بجانب	ليس	4 شجر
مدرّس	المدرسة	هناك	جديد	5 في
محاسب	البنك	أحد	في	6 الجديد

Exercise 6

Listen to these six new adjectives:

big کبیر big صغیر small صغیر long/tall (for people) فویل short ضعیف weak قوی

Now write sentences as in the example:



Exercise 8

Listen to the tape and draw a picture of the description you hear. Play the tape through once without stopping and then play it again, stopping and repeating it as many times as you like until you have finished the drawing.

Vocabulary in Chapter 7

(madīna) town

factory (ع مَصْنَع

(bank) bank

مُسْتَشْفَى (mustashfā) hospital

madrasa) school مُدْرَسَة

street (عshāri) شَارِع

(shajar) trees

هُنَاكَ (hunāka) there is/are

laysa hunāka) there is not/are not

أَمَامَ ('amāma) in front of

... عَلَى عَين on the right of

alā yasār) on the left of عَلَى يَسَار

(fī wasat) in the middle of

(lākin) but

تِین (tīn) figs

(ward) roses

(ḥamām) pigeons

dhubāb) flies) ذُبَاب

lawz) almonds) لَوْز

(battīkh) water melons

(kabīr) big/old

صغیر (saghīr) small/young

(qaṣīr) short

daeīf) weak) ضَعِيف

(qawīy) strong

REVISION

Exercise 1

Handwrite these combinations of letters:

Now listen to the tape and add the vowels to the words.

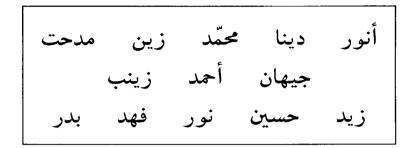
Exercise 2

Complete the table opposite, as in the examples:

word with ال	sun letter	first letter of word	word
(al bayt) (اَلْبَيْت)	no	ب	بیت
(اَلنَّهْر) (an nahr)	yes	ن	بیت
		,	خيمة
			خيمة ذباب
			زجاجة
			وردة
			مصنع
			كتاب
			سيّارة
			درّاجة
			قميص
			حقيبة
			شبّاك صورة
			صورة

Exercise 3

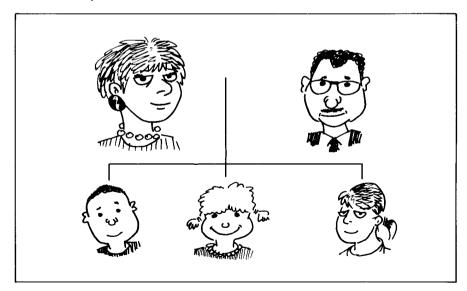
Write the names with their vowels in the correct columns.



07	9	9 8
بذر	دينا	نور

Exercise 4

Listen to the description of the family on the tape and fill in the names on the family tree.



Now draw a family tree for yourself and write a description of it.

Exercise 5

Find the professions in the word square: (The words run either top to bottom or right to left.)

ق	1	ف	و	ن
ق م	ث	ف ش ض - ب -	م	ن ي ق ق ر ر ر و
	ث ص	ش	٥	ح
م ر ض ة		ج	ن	س
ض	٤	ض	1	ق
ö		ت	س	ش
ي	١١	خ	ن د س ط	ر
و و ب	ار	ب	٥	ن
ب	اس	1	U	م
	ل ط ط	ز	<u>ح</u>	و
خ	ط	ت	م	ش

Now write out all the duals and plurals for the words, as in the example:

	w
masculine singular	مدرس
masculine dual	مدرِّسان
masculine plural	مدرسون
feminine singular	مدرّسة
feminine dual	مدرّستان
feminine plural	مدرّسات

Exercise 6

Find the odd word out in these groups of words. The first is an example.

عمار كلب جريدة مامة دجاجة

: أنا أنت هم نحن هل

بدر زینب أحمد مدحت فهد

، هناك في بين فوق بجانب

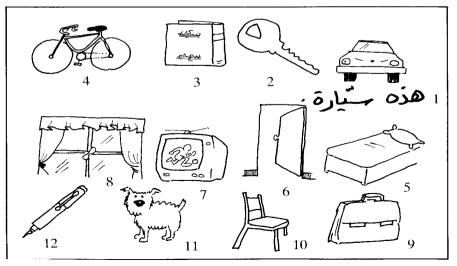
؛ مدرّس محاسب نجّار مصنع خبّاز

6 تين ذباب بطّيخ لوز

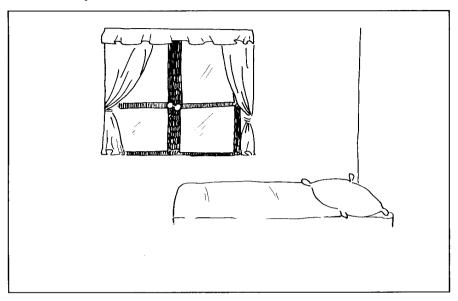
کبیر صغیر ثقیل خفیف کتاب

8 أمّ أب باب أخ بنت

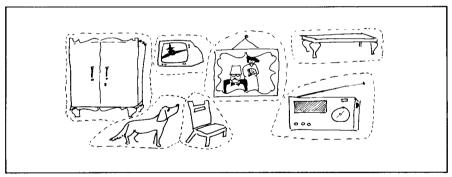
Exercise 7
Write sentences for each picture as in the example.



Exercise 8
Look at the picture of a bedroom:



Now cut out these pictures and stick them in the bedroom.



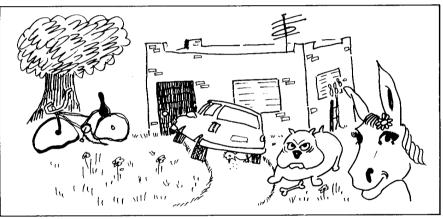
Using some of the words in the box below, write sentences to describe your picture. Start your sentences with هُنَاكُ .

فوق تحت في على بجانب بين أمام على يسار ... على يين أمام

Exercise 9
Match the opposite pairs of adjectives:

	قصير				
صغير (سليم	كبير	ثقيل	قديم	قويّ
أبيض	خفیف	جميل	بف	ضعي	أسود

Now choose one of the adjectives to fit into each gap in the description of the picture. Remember to add tā' marbūṭa and/or لُلُ if necessary.



هذه صورة بيت جميل وبجانب البيت هناك شجرتان: على يمين البيت شجرة ____. وعلى اليسار شجرة ____. والبيت الجميل ____ ولكن باب البيت ____. أمام البيت هناك سيّارة ____ وهناك دجاجة ____ تحت السيّارة .

على يسار السيّارة هناك درّاجة ____والدرّاجة ____ أمام الشجرة ___. على يمين الصورة هناك حمار ___ وبين الحمار ___والسيّارة ___هناك كلب ___و

Exercise 10

Now write questions and answers about the picture in exercise 9, as in the example:

1 الحمار قبيح ؟

هل الحمار توبيع ؟ لا، هو جميل.

2 السيّارة أمام البيت ؟

3 الكلب جميل ؟

4 الدرّاجة مكسورة ؟

5 الدجاجة على السيّارة ؟

6 باب البيت أبيض ؟

7 الشجرة الصغيرة على يسار البيت ؟

8 الكلب بين الحمار والسيّارة ؟

Exercise 11

Look at this list of pronouns and possessive endings. Pay special attention to the plural of 'you' and the plural possessive endings which you have not met before.

pronoun possessive ending

النا (I) (i) ت

نتُ (you, masc.) (ka) أنتَ ...

singular أنت (you, fem.) (ki) في .

ر (he) (hu) هو ...

... هَا (she) (hā) هي

pronoun possessive ending

نحن (we) (nā) أنْ ...

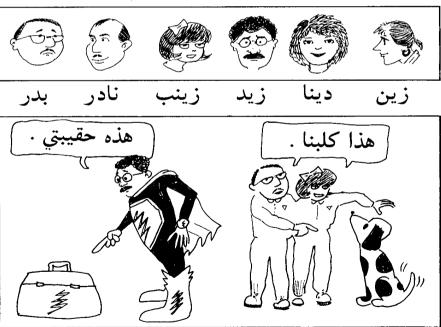
رُهُ (you, pl.) (kum) أنْتُم (they, dual) (humā) أنْ ...

رُهُ (they, masc.) (hum) هُنْ ...

(they, fem.) (hunna)

You can see that the last three possessive endings are easy to remember, as they are the same as the pronouns.

Now look again at these characters you met in Chapter 2 and listen to the two examples:



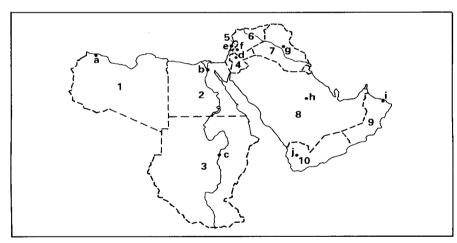
هذا كلب بدر وزينب . هذه حقيبة زيد . هذا كلبُههَا . هذه حقيبته . Now complete the following:



COUNTRIES AND

PEOPLE

9.1 THE MIDDLE EAST اَلشَّرْق الأَوْسَط Look at this map of the Middle East and then listen to the names of the countries.



عُمَان	9	لُبْنَان	5	لِيبْيَا]
ٱلْيَمَن	10	سُورِيَة		مِصْر	2
		اَلْعِرَاق	7	اَلسُّودَان	
		اَلسَّعُو ديَّة*	8	ٱڵٲؙۯڎڹۜ	4

* The full name is: الْمُلَكَة العَرَبِيَّة السعوديّة (The Arabic Saudi kingdom, more commonly translated as The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia).

Exercise 1

Can you find the other nine countries in the word square? Find the country, circle it and then write it out, as in the example.

					·		,		
ب	ث	م		٥	ر	ض	ن	ف	ت
1	ق	ص	ل	ظ	و	س	J	ش	ز
٥	ز	ر	اس	ر	ض	ص	ي	ي	ن
ق	1	ر	له	J	1	ز	ب	ذ	ت
ش	ب	خ	[و	,	ن	م	ي	J	1
س	ح	ن	د	ر	1	J	1	ب	ج
غ	ع	1	اي	ث	ت	ج	J	ن	ف
ي	و	رغ.	رق)	ي	ر	و	س	1	ن
ف	ij	ث	م	٥	ض	ش	و	ن	ز
1	4	ص	ظ	ح	ز	ت	٥	ذ	ز
س	لد	ن	ب	1	خ	ن	1	م	ع
ق	ش	ث	ડે	ز	غ	ح	ن	م	ر

السعودية

Now listen to these capital cities, looking at the map on the previous page (capital city = غاصِمة).

Notice that without the vowels this shape: عَـهَان could be عَـهَان , the country, or عَـهَان , the capital of Jordan. Watch carefully for the context to tell you which is being referred to.

Exercise 2

Answer these questions referring to the map. The first is an example:*

ا هل القاهرة في اليمن ؟

لا م هي في مصر٠

2 هل بغداد في لبنان ؟

عل الرياض في السعودية ؟

4 أين عَبَّان ؟

: هل الأردن بين السعودية وسورية ؟

6 أين مسقط ؟

7 هل عُهَان بجانب اليمن ؟

8 هل العراق بجانب السودان ؟

* Remember that towns and cities are almost always feminine (see Chapter 3).

Exercise 3

Now write ten sentences describing the countries and capital cities shown on the map. The first is an example:

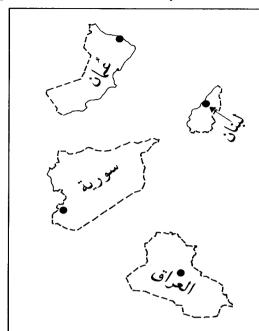
ا القاهرة في مصر وهي عاصمة مصر.

9.2 GEOGRAPHICAL POSITION

Look at the compass and read the words.



Now listen to these descriptions:



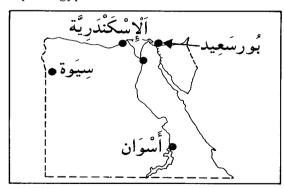
مسقط في شِمَال عُمان.

بيروت في غَرْب لبنان .

دمشق في جَنُوب سورية .

غداد في شُرْق العراق .

Exercise 4
Look at this map of Egypt and the four towns marked on it.



Now fill in the gaps in these sentences:

1 أسوان في____مصر .

2 سيوة في ______

3 _____ مصر .

•

9.3 OTHER COUNTRIES OF THE WORLD

Many Arabic names for countries are similar to the English and vice versa. Names of foreign countries often end in a long 'a' (1). You will find that you will become better at picking out these foreign names as you become more aware of patterns in the Arabic language.

Exercise 5

Read the names of the countries in Arabic and then match them to their English equivalents.

_			
أُمْرِيكَا	1	a	China
الصِّين	2	b	Spain
رُوسْيَا	3	_ c	America ¹
اليَابَان	4	d	Italy
إِنْجِلْتَرَا	5	e	Japan
فَرَنْسَا	6	f	Russia
أُلْمَانْيَا	7	g	England
أُسْبَانْيَا	8	h	France
إِيطَالْيَا	9	i	Germany

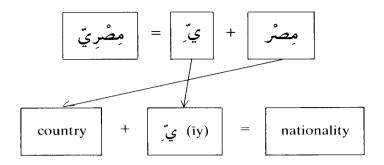
Now check your pronunciation of the Arabic with the tape.

(The United States) أَلُولاَيَاتِ المُتَّحِدَة

9.4 NATIONALITIES

Listen to the tape and look at the pictures.





Words which describe nationality are adjectives. The adjective is made by adding \ddot{y} (\bar{y}) to the noun, in this case the country. (This adjectival ending is known as nisba.)

There are a few things to remember when adding the nisba (īy) ending:

1. If the noun ends in tā' marbūṭa (هُ), ā (أَ) or yā (كُ), remove this before adding the nisba ending:

2. Remove J before adding the ending:

(But remember that the adjective must have الله if the noun does: - السيّارة اليابانيّة - see section 7.4.)

One nationality is slightly unusual. Take a special note of it:

Exercise 6 Now complete the following table:

iplete the following table:	
الدَّوْلَة Country	الجِنْسِيَّة Nationality
الاًردنّ	
	عِرَاقِيّ
اليابان	
أمريكا	
أسبانيا	
	رُ وسِـيّ
الصين	
	عُانيّ
إيطاليا	.
~ ~ .	سُورِيّ
لبنان	ردِي
0	مِصْرِيّ
	مِصرِي
ليبيا	
فرنسا	
ألمانيا	
	w 1 .1

109 Exercise 7 Here are some famous faces, some of whom you have already seen. Write descriptions of them, following the example given in number 1.



3 دیانا









8 جَاكْسُون

7 میتیران

إنجليزيّ

You should have noticed that if you want to make nationalities plural, then you can use the sound masculine plural (ūn) or the sound feminine plural (āt), just as you can with many jobs (see Chapter 4):

مِصْرِیُّون masc. pl. مِصْرِیَّات fem. pl.

There are a few exceptions to this for the *masculine* plural:

masculine plural	masculine singular
ٳ۪ڹ۠ڿؚڶؚيز	ٳؚڹجليزيّ
عَرَب	عَرَبِيّ
رُ وس	رُوسِيّ

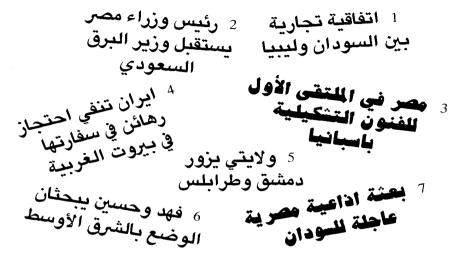
In these cases the plural is made by removing the nisba ending (īy). The feminine plural is not affected. (Remember to use the dual for two people.)

Exercise 8 Write questions and answers as in the example:



Exercise 9

Look at these 7 newspaper headlines and decide which two countries are involved in each.



Exercise 10

Look at the immigration form and listen to the conversation on the tape. Listen once without writing, then listen again filling in the missing information on the form.

الاسم*
الجنسية
المهنة*
اسم الزوجة
جنسية الزوجة
مهنة الزوجة

Now read this description of Ahmed and Dina:

أحمد حسين مهندس في الرياض . أحمد سعوديّ ولكن زوجته دينا مصرّية . دينا مدرّسة في الرياض .

From the following completed form, write a similar description for Mohammad and Zainab.

<u>محمّد نور</u>	الاسم
سوريّ	الجنسية
محاسب (في دمشق)	المهنة
<u>زینب نور</u>	اسم الزوجة
قييّة	جنسية الزوجة
عرّضة	مهنة الزوجة

Vocabulary in Chapter 9

(ashsharq al awsat) The Middle East
(lībyā/lībīy) Libya/Libyan
(miṣr/miṣrīy) Egypt/Egyptian
(as sūdān/sūdānīy) Sudan/Sudanese
(lubnān/lubnānīy) Lebanon/Lebanese
(sūriya/sūrīy) Syria/Syrian (also written as الْعِرَاقِيّ (as sūdāy) Iraq/Iraqi
(as sa sa cūdiyya/sa cūdīy) Saudi (Arabia)/Saudi

(¿umān/¿umānīy) Oman/Omani ٱلْيَمَن/يَمَنِيّ (al yaman/yamanīy) Yemen/Yemeni أَمْريكَا/أَمْريكِيّ ('amrīkā/'amrīkīy) America/American اَلصِّين/صِينِيّ (as sīn/sīnīy) China/Chinese رُوسْيَا/رُوسِيّ (rūsya/rūsīy) Russia/Russian اليَابَان/يَابَانيّ (al yābān/yābānīy) Japan/Japanese إِنْجِلْتَرَا/إِنْجِلِيزِيّ ('injilterā/'injilīzīy) England/English (إِنْكُلْتُرَا/إِنكليزيّ also written as) (faransā/faransīy) France/French أَلْمَانْيَا/أَلْمَانِيّ ('almānyā/'almānīy) Germany/German أَسْبَانْيَا/أَسْبَانِيّ ('asbānyā/'asbānīy) Spain/Spanish إيطَالْيَا/إِيطَالِيّ ('ītālyā/'ītālīy) Italy/Italian (¿āsima) capital (city) (dawla) country, state (jinsiyya) nationality (ism) name (mihna) profession (shimāl) north (janūb) south (gharb) west (sharq) east (min) from

COUNTING THINGS

10.1 ARABIC NUMBERS 1-10

European languages adopted Arabic numerals in the Middle Ages to replace the very clumsy Roman numerals. However, the Europeans altered the shape of many of the numbers. Compare the Arabic numbers 1 to 10 with the English.

Arabic	English
1	1
۲	2
٣	3
٤	4
٥	5
7	6
Y	7
٨	8
٩	9
١.	10

You can see obvious similarities between the 1 and the 9 in both languages. There is also a theory that the Arabic Y and W were turned on their side:



to produce the English 2 and 3.

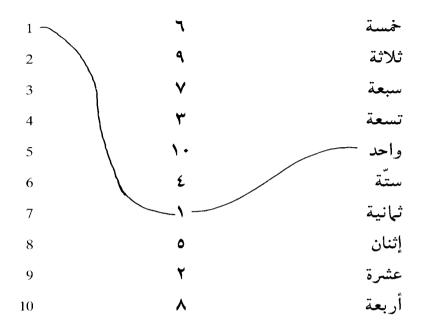
Look at the Arabic numbers written out below and repeat them after the tape. Each number is repeated twice:

٦ سِتَّة	١ وَاحِد
٧ سَبْعَة	٢ إِثْنَان
٨ ثَمَانِيَة	٣ ثُلَاثَة
٩ تِسْعَة	٤ أَرْبَعَة
١٠عَشَرَة	٥ خَمْسَة

One strange feature of Arabic numbers is that they are written from left to right, the same way as English numbers. (Look at the Arabic \ and the English 10.) This is the opposite direction to the rest of the Arabic script. You may see Arabs writing numbers backwards (as if you wrote 12387 starting with the 7 and finishing with the 1). This means that they can write the numbers in the same direction as the letters. However, writing numbers backwards is a difficult art to master and it is quite acceptable to 'skip' and start the numbers from the left:

Arabic script	Arabic number	Arabic script
\leftarrow	\rightarrow	\leftarrow
مُدَرِّسَات في المَدْرَسَة .	١.	هناك

Exercise 1 Match the numbers with the words. One is completed as an example.



Now write the vowels on the words.

10.2 HANDWRITTEN NUMBERS

Most of the Arabic handwritten numbers look the same as the printed ones. The confusion comes with the Υ and Υ (2 and 3). If you look below you will see that the handwritten Υ (3) looks very like a printed Υ (2). You should be careful to remember this, especially when reading handwritten prices!

Printed	Handwritten
۲	(
٣	4

Handwriting Practice

17 73 O T V 10 1

144 019 A.E 1774 VWV

10.3 ENGLISH WORDS IN ARABIC

If English took its numbers from Arabic, then Arabic has taken quite a few words in return. For example, the most frequently used word for 'bank' is بنك . The word used for the currency of Egypt and the Sudan is بنك , usually translated as 'pound', but coming from the English word 'guinea'.

Many of these adopted words also have 'proper' Arabic names (the 'proper' Arabic word for bank is مُصْرُف , meaning 'place to change or cash money'). However, the adopted words are usually the ones used, although this varies from country to country.

Like the names of foreign countries in Chapter 8, you will become better at recognising words of foreign origin when you are more familiar with the patterns of Arabic.

Exercise 2

Read these Arabic words, which are all adopted from English, and try to work out their meaning:

Note: All exercises from now on will be numbered in Arabic numbers.

٦ كِيلُو	١ فِيلم
٧ دِيُوقْرَاطِيَّة*	٢ تِليِفُون*
٨ بَرْكَان*	٣ طَمَاطِم
٩ مِيدَالْيَة*	٤ بَطَاطَا
١٠مَلْيُون	٥ سِيجَارَة

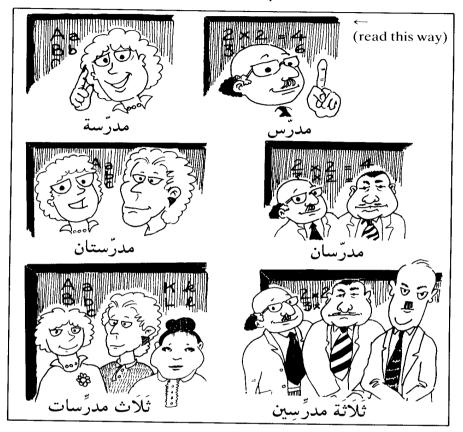
Now check your pronunciation with the tape.

* These words can be

* These words can be made plural by using the sound feminine plural (see Chapter 7.3).

10.4 COUNTING THINGS

Look at the following and listen to the tape:



(* Remember that if there are two of something you should use the dual and not the number 2.)

Notice these points:

- 1. The masculine plural مُدرِّسُون (mudarrisūn) becomes (mudarrisin) after the numbers 3 to 10. (See structure notes for further explanation.)
- 2. مدرِّسين is masculine, and yet the number مُلاَثَة has a tā' marbūṭa (هُ),which is normally used for the feminine. does not have a tā' مُدَرِّسَات is feminine, and yet the number مُدَرِّسَات

This reversal of the usual use of the tā' marbūṭa is a strange feature of Arabic numbers and causes errors, even amongst native speakers.

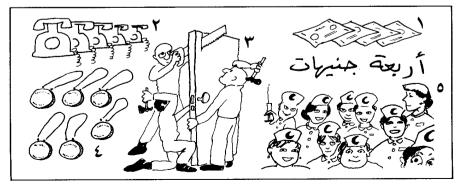
Here is a list of the masculine and feminine numbers from 3 to 10.

masculine	feminine	
ثَلَاثَة	ثَلَاث	
أُرْبَعَة	أَرْبَع	
خُسنة	خَفْسَ	
سِتَّة	سِيت	
سَبْعَة	سَبْع	
ثَمَانِيَة	ثَمَانٍ	(thamānin*)
تِسْعَة	تِسْعَ	* The two kasras under the nun
عَشَرَة	عَشَر	(نٍ) are pronounced 'in'.

As you can see, the feminine number is generally made by taking the tā' marbūta off the masculine number. The number 8 is irregular. However, when you put a feminine noun after ثمَان (thamanin), it becomes ثَمَانی (thamānī) – which is the same as the masculine except without the ta' marbūta:

> eight (female) teachers eight cars ثماني سيّارات

Exercise 3 How many? ؟ کم ؟ Look at the pictures and the example. Then complete the exercise, as in the example.



بكُمْ ?HOW MUCH

There are many currencies used throughout the Arab World. Here are some of the most common:

pound جُنيْه

riyal ريَال

dinar ڊيٽار

lira ليرا

dirhem دِرْهَم

fils فَلْس

Exercise 4

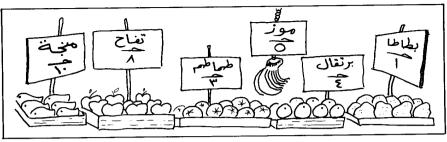
Look at these stamps from different countries. Find which of the above currencies is used by:

١ الكويت ٢ السعودية

٣ قَطَر ٤ دُبِي

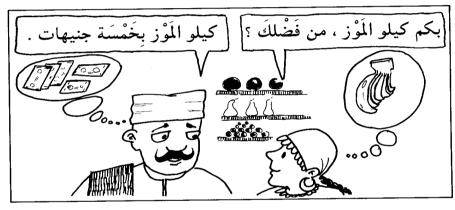


Look at this fruit stall:



(* note that جنیه is shortened to جنیه , a handwritten version of ج.)

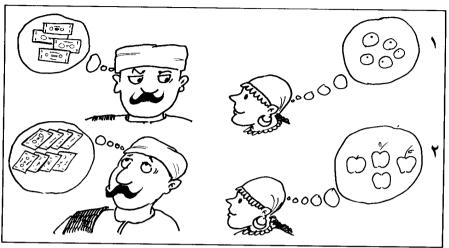
Now listen to this conversation between the stall holder and a customer:



(to a man) فَضْلكَ من فَضْلكِ (to a woman) فَضْلكِ فَضْلكِ فَضْلكِ فَضْلكُمْ (to a group)

(كيلو الموز بخمسة جنيهات :must also be used in the answer)

Exercise 5
Now complete these conversations:



کہ ؟ ?10.6 HOW MANY?

Look at the cutting from a newspaper below. What do you think the table is? (The title and photograph should help you.)

	ات	الميدالي	قائمة
برونزية	فضية	دهبیه	الدولة
V	٠,٩	٠. ٩	١ _ الاتحاد السوفياتي
٤	٦	٧	٢ ــ المانيا الشرقية
7	_	٤	۳ _ فنلندا
*	٤	٣	٤ _ النمسا
1		٣	ه ـ السويد
٤	٥	7	۲ _ سویسرا
\	۲	۲	٧ ـ المانيا الغربية
\	\	۲	٨ ـ الو لأيات المتحدة
7	۲	\	۹ _ هولندا
\	_	\	۱۰ _ فرنسا

This is a medals table: قَائِمَة المَيدَالْيَات (literally 'list of the medals').

You should be able to work out what each column is (look at the last - left-hand - column especially. This should give you a clue). Here are the three words at the top of the columns with their vowels:

These are *adjectives* describing the medals. The adjectives describe what *material* the medal is made of. They are like the nisba adjectives used for describing nationalities (see Chapter 9):

You can follow the same rules for making adjectives from materials as you did in Chapter 9 for nationalities. (Look back at section 9.4 if you've forgotten.)

Exercise 6

Complete the table below:

adj (fem.) ذهبیّه	adj (masc.)	noun ذهب	
	ڣ۬ڞۣۜۜ	فِضّة	
برونزيّة			
		خَشُب	(wood)
	قُطْنيّ		(cotton)
مَطَاطيّة			(rubber)
		زُجَاج	(glass)
	حَريريّ		(silk)

In the medals table on the last page, the adjectives at the top of the columns all end with tā' marbūṭa (ق). They are describing the word ميدَاليَات, which is plural. All plurals of non-human words (in other words, all things which are not people) are described by a feminine adjective, whether they are masculine or feminine in the singular. This will be covered more thoroughly in Chapter 11.

for possession ل

Look at the medals table and find Finland amongst the countries. Now look at this sentence:

(Literally: to Finland four gold medals)

Arabic uses \mathcal{J} ('to') to describe possession and not a verb like the English has/have.

ن is written as part of the word that follows. If it is put before \dot{U} , the combination becomes \dot{U} (lil):

J can also be used with the possessive endings (see Chapter 5). Make a special note of how the kasra changes to a fatha except for the first example:

you (masc.) have

you (fem.) have

he has

she has

Exercise 7

Turn back to exercise 8 in Chapter 5 and read this description of Mohammed's possessions.

لِمحمّد كلب صغير وجميل وهو أسود . له درّاجة قديمة ومكسورة ولكن له قلم جديد وجميل . مفتاحه أسود وله قميص أبيض ولكن القميص قديم .

Now write a similar description for Jihan.

Exercise 8

Now look at the medals table and answer these questions. The first is an example.

١ كم ميدالية ذهبيّة لفنلندا ؟

لفنلندا أربع ميداليات ذهبية.

٢ كم ميدالية ذهبيّة للسويد؟

٣ كم ميدالية فضّية للاتّحاد السوفياتي ؟

٤ هل لفرنسا ميداليات فضّية ؟

٥ كم ميدالية برونزيّة لسُويسْرًا ؟

٦ هل للولايات المتّحدة ثلاث ميداليات ذهبيّة ؟

٧ هل هناك دولة عربية في القَائِمَة ؟

٨ هل هولندا بين السويد وألمانيا الغُرْبيَّة في القائمة ؟

Asking questions about numbers

Many of the questions in exercise 7 began with:

كم ميدالية ... ؟ (How many medals...?)

You might have wondered why the Arabic word ميدالية was singular, and not plural as in English. This is because كم is followed by a noun in the singular:

+ singular noun

10.7 STRUCTURE NOTES

Summary of cases

The third, and final, case in Arabic is the accusative (اَلْنُصْبُ). This is made by adding two fathas (عُ) on the last letter of the word. This is pronounced 'an'. The table below is a summary of all the case endings:

	a	indefinite	definite
nominative	(اَلرَّفْع)	(kalb <i>un</i>) کلبً	(al kalbu) الكلبُ
accusative	(اَلنَّصْب)	(kalb <i>an</i>) کلبًا	(al kalba) الكلبَ
genitive	(اَ هُجَرّ)	(kalb <i>in</i>) کلب	(al kalb <i>i</i>) الكلب

Note that the accusative indefinite has an extra alif written on the end of the word. This alif is not pronounced and is there simply to show the word is accusative. It is *not* written if the word ends in a tā' marbūṭa:

When the alif is written, the full case ending is usually pronounced. As this is one of the few times a case ending affects the basic script and pronunciation, it is important to try and remember when it should be used.

On a very few occasions, you might come across an ending which looks like a case ending but which is an integral part of the word. ثَعَانُ is an example of this.

The cases work differently for the sound masculine plural and the dual. They are important to remember as they affect the pronounced part of the word. They do not vary between the definite and indefinite.

nominative		<i>SMP</i> mudarris <i>ūn(a)</i>	مدرّسَانِ	<i>Dual</i> mudarris <i>ān(i)</i>
accusative & genitive*	مدرّسِي <i>نَ</i>	$mudarris \bar{\imath} n(a)$	مدرّ سَيْ <i>ن</i> ِ	mudarris <i>ain(i)</i>

^{*} Spoken dialects use this form throughout.

Numbers

We can now look again at the examples in this chapter with the full case endings:

The numbers 3 to 10 are *always* followed by a noun in the genitive plural and this is what causes the sound masculine plural ending to change. The feminine plural is also in the genitive but this does not affect the basic script:

The singular noun which appears after كُمْ (see section 10.6) is in the accusative:

Looking back at the table of cases, this means that any words not ending in a tā' marbūṭa کم will probably be written with the extra alif:

In case you feel that the structure is getting rather complicated, let me assure you that the numbers in Arabic are particularly difficult and most native speakers will be very impressed if you can remember all the various combinations! Remember also that these notes are meant for recognition purposes and you need only to skim briefly through them unless you are interested.

Exercise 9 (Optional)

Write the questions and answers as in the example.



Vocabulary in Chapter 10

	(wāḥid) one
ٳؿ۠ڹؘٲڹ	(ithnān) two
ثَلَاثَة	(thalātha) three
أرْبَعَة	('arbaea) four
خمستة	(khamsa) five
ستّة	(sitta) six
سَبْعَة	(sabea) seven
ثَمَانِيَة	(thamānya) eight
تِسْعَة	(tisعa) nine
عَشُرَة	(عashara) ten
كُمْ ؟	(kam) how many?
بِكُمْ ؟	(bikam) how much? (junayh) pound
جُنَيْه	(junayh) pound
رِيَال	(riyāl) riyal (dirham) dirhem
دِرْهَم	(dirham) dirhem
	(dīnār) dinar
فُلْس	(fals) fils
طماطم	(ṭamāṭim) tomatoes
۵	(baṭāṭā) potatoes
مَنْجَة	(manga) mangos
تفاح	(manga) mangos (tuffāḥ) apples (burtuqāl) oranges
	(burtuqāl) oranges
	(mawz) bananas
ذُهِب/ذ	(dhahab/dhahabī) gold/golden
فِضَّة/فِ	(fiḍḍa/fiḍḍī) silver

(barūnz/barūnzī) bronze (khashab/khashabī) wood/wooden (qutn/qutnī) cotton (maţāţ/maţāţi) rubber zujāj/zujājī) glass (رُجَاجِ/زُجَاجِيّ َ مَرِير / حَرِيريّ (ḥarīr/ḥarīrī) silk/silken (fīlm) film (tilīfūn) telephone (sījāra) cigarette (kīlū) kilo (mīdālya) medal (malyūn) million (barlaman) parliament (dīmūqrāţīyya) democracy (qā'ima) list (min fadl(u)ka) please (to a man) (min fadl(u)ki) please (to a woman) (min fadl(u)kum) please (to a group) * literally 'from your grace'

SHAPES AND

COLOURS

المُصْدَر ARABIC ROOTS

Look at the following words with their translations:

a book کتاب

an office/desk مَكْتَب

writing کتابَة

(he) wrote

writer/clerk کَاتب

(he) writes

مَكْتُوب (something) written down or a letter

library/bookshop

All these words have a connection with writing. Can you find the three letters that occur in all these words?

You should be able to pick out quite easily the three common letters:

ك kāf

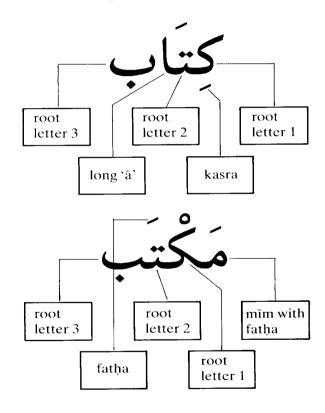
tā'

ب bā'

Notice how they always appear in this order. The bā' does not come before the tā' in any of the words, nor the kāf after the tā', etc.

So we can say that if the sequence of letters ك التراب (reading from right to left) appears in a word, the word will have something to do with the meaning of 'writing'. These three letters are the *root letters* (المُصْدُر) connected with writing.

The eight words above are made up of the three root letters, with different long and short vowels between them and sometimes with extra letters added on the beginning and/or the end of the root letters:



The great majority of Arabic words are formed around a sequence of three root letters and learning to recognise these will help you enormously with learning the language.

You can often (but *not* always) find the root of a word by ignoring the vowels (long and short) and removing the extra letters at the beginning and end. As you learn more about the structure of Arabic, you will learn to recognise these extra letters. For the moment, it is enough

to know that mīm is a common extra letter on the front of a sequence (prefix) and that tā' marbūṭa is a common extra letter on the end (suffix).

Exercise 1

Try to write the three root letters for these words which you already know, as in the example. The left-hand column tells you the general meaning of this root.

General meaning	(الْمُصْدَر) Root letters	(الكَلِمَة) Word
calculating	ح/س/ب	محاسب
bigness	/ /	كبير
carving (wood)	/ /	نجّار
opening	/ /	مفتاح
sealing (a letter)	/ /	خاتم
moving along	/ /	درّاجة
producing	/ /	مصنع
falling sick	/ /	ممرضة
studying	/ /	مَدْرَسَة مدرّس

11.2 PLURAL PATTERNS 1 AND 2

You already know two ways of making words plural:

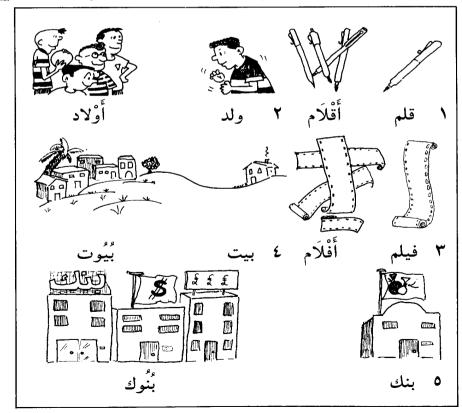
1. *Sound masculine plural.* This can be used with some words that refer to male people only:

2. Sound feminine plural. This can be used with most words that refer to female people and with a few other masculine and feminine words:

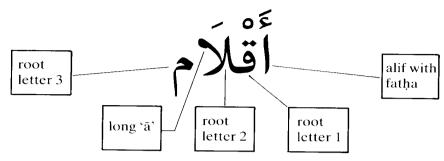
Plural	Singular
محرّضات	ممرّضة
سيّارات	سيّارة
تليفونات	تليفون

Unfortunately, many Arabic words cannot be made plural in either of these ways. They are made plural by following different patterns which you will learn in the next few chapters.

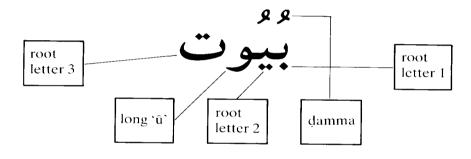
ELook at the pictures and listen to the tape:



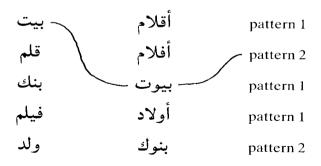
Pattern 1:



Pattern 2:



Exercise 2 Match the singular and plural words as in the example.



Now write the vowels on the words.

Notice that although the vowels on the singular words may vary, they are always the same in the plural pattern.

These plural patterns are known as *broken plurals* because the word is 'broken apart' and different long and short vowels are arranged around the root letters. Arabic will also fit words coming from foreign languages (such as film and bank) into these patterns if they have three consonants (i.e. letters that are not vowels). Repeat these plurals to yourself as they may help you to remember the pattern.

Exercise 3

The following words also fit into pattern 1. Write out their plurals, as in the example.

plural	singular	
أُلُواَن	لَوْن	(colour)
	شَكْل	(shape)
	صَاحِب	(friend)
	سُوق	*(market)
	و َقْت	(time)

* In this case, • is the 2nd root letter.

These words fit into pattern 2. Write out their plurals.

plural singular

شینْف (sword)

بالله (heart)

را مُلِك (king)

مُلِك (army)

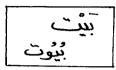
خیش (sheikh)

Now check your answers with the tape or in the answer section.

Vocabulary learning

From now on, always learn a word with its plural.

If you are using the card system (see Chapter 1) write the plural below the singular:

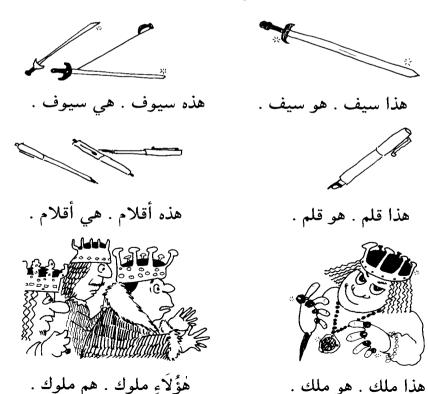


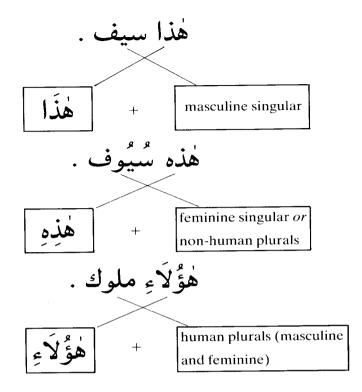
house

Just writing the plural will help you to remember it. Make sure that you can remember the singular *and* the plural before the card passes into the next envelope.

11.3 WHAT ARE THESE?

Look at the pictures and listen to the tape:





You can see that although هؤلاء is the plural of هذه and هذه, it is only used when you are talking about people. This is because Arabic divides plurals into:

- 1. Human (people)
- 2. Non-human (objects, ideas etc.)

(Animals are usually put into the second category, except in some romantic writing and poetry.)

The same rules apply to non-human plurals as to the feminine singular. In other words, you should use the same words with non-human plurals as you do with a feminine singular word. For example:

هذه سيوف . : هذه Use –

هي سيوف . : هي Use –

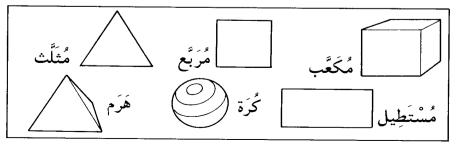
- Use an adjective with a tā' marbūṭa: . السيوف جميلة

Modern Standard Arabic grammar considers non-human plurals to be feminine singular. There is no exception to this.

Exercise 4
Write sentences, as in the example:



11.4 SHAPES الأشكال Look at the pictures and listen to the tape:



All of these words except for هُــرَه and هُــرَم are nouns and adjectives:

. هذا مکعّب This is a cube. a cubic metre

The plural of هُرُم fits into pattern 1:

plural singular هَرَم أُهْرَام

(Look back at the logo of the newspaper الأهرام in Chapter 6.)

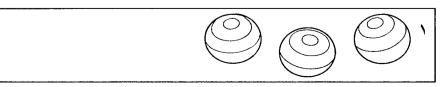
Exercise 5

All of the other shapes are made plural by using the *sound feminine plural*. Fill in the plurals in the column below, as in the example:

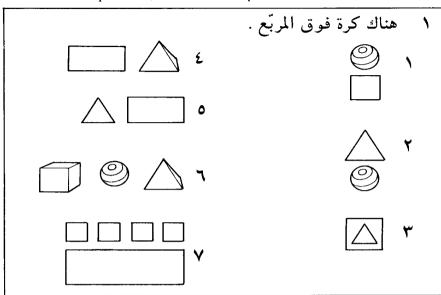
plural singular مثلّث مثلّاث مربّع مستطیل کرة مکعّب

Exercise 6

Now listen to the tape and draw the correct type and number of shapes. The first answer is drawn for you. Draw the other seven.



Exercise 7
Describe these pictures, as in the example:



الألوان 11.5 COLOURS الألوان Look at the pictures and listen to the tape:



Although you can usually make an adjective feminine by adding tā' marbūta:

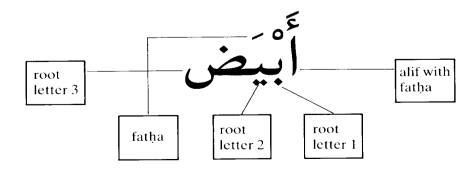
there are exceptions to this. The colours have their own feminine adjectives, as shown above.

Look at the masculine and feminine adjectives and find the three root letters that occur in both. (Remember to ignore long and short vowels.) You should find the following:

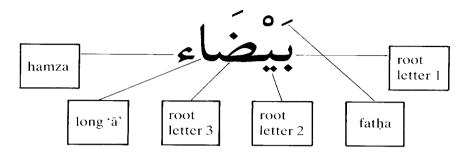


We can now see the pattern for the colour adjectives:

masculine adjective:



feminine adjective:



Exercise 8

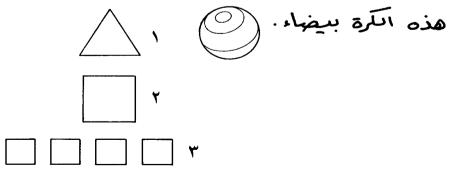
Here is a table showing the masculine adjectives for some other colours. Fill in the column for the feminine adjectives:

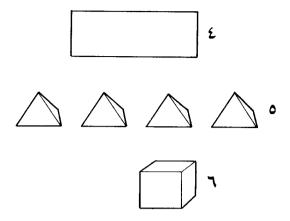
meaning	feminine (& non-human plurals)	masculine
green		أخْضَر
blue		أُزْرَق
red		أُحْمَر
yellow		أَصْفَر

Now check your answers with the tape or in the answer section.

Exercise 9

Colour these shapes and describe them, as in the example:





Exercise 10

Now colour the shapes in exercise 7 and write descriptions. For example, if you coloured the square green and the sphere blue in number one, the sentence would read:

11.6 STRUCTURE NOTES

Case endings: broken plurals

All nouns and adjectives, whether they are singular, dual, plural, masculine or feminine, have case endings. The only exception to this is for some words of foreign origin (e.g.: أمريكا/كيلو) where case endings would be very clumsy.

Look back at the summary of cases in section 11.2. The two patterns of the broken plural you have met in this chapter both have case endings as shown in this table, i.e.:

	indefinite	definite
nominative (الرفع)	أقلامٌ	الأقلامُ
accusative (النصب)	أقلامًا	الأقلام
genitive (الجرّ)	أقلام	الأقلام

Case endings: colours

The adjectives for colours have only one damma (4) in the nominative definite and indefinite. Look at this table which shows all the case endings for the colours:

	indefinite	definite
nominative (الرفع)	أبيضُ	الأبيضُ
accusative (النصب)	أبيض	الأبيضَ
genitive (الجرّ)	أبيض	الأبيض

You can see that the *definite* endings are regular. The indefinite, however, only has two forms: a single damma in the nominative (2); and a single fatha in the accusative and genitive (2).

Words which have these case endings are known as diptotes.

Look at these sentences from this chapter with all the case endings added:

هذه سُيُونُ .
هُولاً مِ مُلُوكُ .
السيوف جميلة .
هناك كرة فوق المربّع .
هذا المربّع أبيضُ .
هذه الكرة بيضاء .
هذه الم بعات بيضاء .

Exercise 11 (optional)

Write all the case endings on the sentences you have written in exercise 10. For example:

هناك كرة زرقاء فوق المرتع الأخفر

Vocabulary in Chapter 11

From now on, vocabulary at the end of the chapter will be listed without the transliteration (English letters).

friend صَاحِب (أَصْحَاب) market سُوق (أَسْوَاق) وَقْت (أَوْقَات) time سَنْف (سُنُه ف) sword قَلْبِ (قُلُوبِ) heart مَلك (مُلُوك) king جَىْش (خُيُوش) army شَيْخ (شَيُوخ) sheikh شَكْل (أَشْكَال) shape كُرَة (كُرَات) sphere/globe/ball مُثَلَّث (مُثَلَّثَات) triangle/triangular مُرَبَّع (مُرَبَّعات) square مُكَعَّب (مُكَعَّبات) cube/cubic مُسْتَطِيل (مُسْتَطِيلات) rectangle/rectangular هَرَم (أَهْرَام) pyramid لَوْن (أَلْوَان) colour أُخْضَر (fem. خَضْرُ اء) أَحْمَر (fem. حَمْرَ أ ء) أَزْرَق(.fem زَ رْقَاء)

is a forthern e

yellow أَصْفَر (fem.) أَصْفَر yellow فَوُلَاءِ these (for people only)

WHAT HAPPENED

YESTERDAY?

12.1 WHAT HAPPENED YESTERDAY? ؟ ماذا حدث أمس Look at the newspaper headline and the pictures:



Exercise 1

Match these Arabic words from the headline to the English:

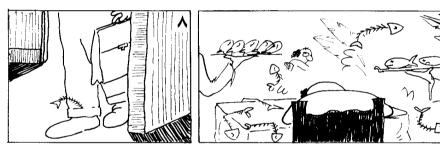
thief نَّسْرِقَة investigation لِصَّ yesterday يُعْقِيق theft/robbery with

Now answer these questions in English:

- 1. Where is the bank?
- 2. How much money was stolen?
- 3. When did the robbery take place?
- 4. What is the name of the bank?
- 5. How many thieves are under investigation?

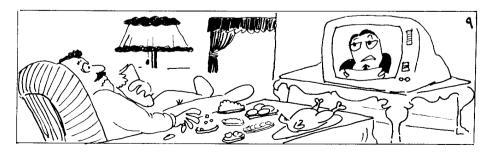


« ذَهَبْتُ إلى مَطْعَم عربي ... »



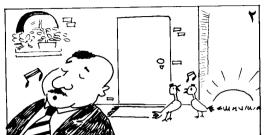
رَجَعْتُ من المكتب إلى الميتي مَسَاءً ... »

« وأَكُلْتُ سَمَكاً . »



« وسَمِعْتُ عن السرقة في التليفزيون ... »

The two suspects both deny carrying out the robbery. Listen to the male suspect's alibi.





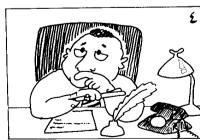
« أنا أحمد حمدي وبيتي في «أمس خَرَجْتُ من بيتي صَبَاحاً ... » جنوب مدينة عيّان ... »



وذَهَبْتُ إلى مَكْتَبِي في وسط المدينة ... »



« وشَرِبْتُ فِنْجَان قَهْوَة . »



« كَتَبْتُ خِطَابَات ... »

(Read this way.)←

صَبَاحًا .	البيت		البيت		ذَهَبْتُ
(in the morning)	_,,	إلى	- 25.	مِنْ	(I went)
مُسَاءً . (in the evening)	المكتب	(to)	المكتب	(from)	رجعت (I returned)

(coffee)	قَهْوَة	فِنْجَان	
(tea)	شَاي		

(cola) (water)

(* As this is idafa (see Chapters 5/6), you should pronounce the ta' marbūta on the first word:

> (; جاجة مَاء zujājat mā'

12.2 ASKING QUESTIONS ABOUT THE PAST

A policeman is now checking the suspect's story:





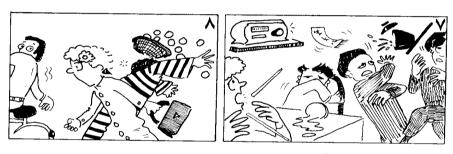
Exercise 2 Now write more questions and answers as in the example:

ا كتبت خِطَابَات/مكتب
 هل كتبت خطابات في مكتبك؟
 نعم ، كتبت خطابات في مكتبي.

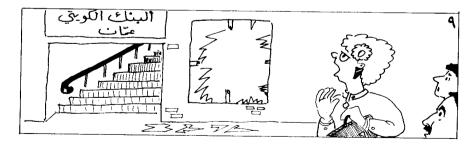
- ذهبت/مَطْعَم أمريكيّ ؟
 - ٣ أكلت سمكًا/مطعم؟
 - رجعت/بيت مَسَاءً ؟
- سمعت/سرقة/, ادبو؟



« ____ إلى مطعم ___... »



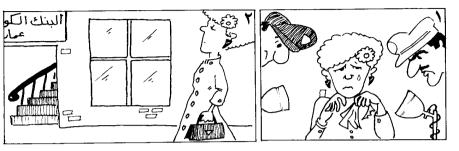
« و في المطعم سَمِعْتُ ____ رجعت ___المطعم ___ السرقة في ____. » البنك ...



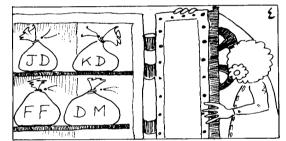
« وَجَدْتُ ___المكسور ...! »

Exercise 3

The female suspect, Zainab Shawqi, is a clerk in the Kuwaiti bank. Read her alibi and fill in the missing words:

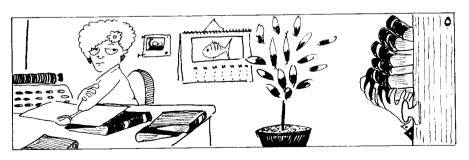


« أنا زينب شَوْقِيّ و ____ « أمس ... ذَهَبْتُ إلى ____ في وسط مدينة عبّان . » صباحًا ... »





« و ____فِنْجَان شَاي . » « فَتَحْتُ الخَزَانَة ... »



« وَجَلَسْتُ على مَكْتَبِي . »*

(* على مكتبى = *at* my desk)

The policeman is now checking Zainab's story:



Notice that the verbs are the same whether they are in questions or in sentences. *There is no question form (did you/he? etc.) in Arabic.*

Exercise 4

Choose a question word from the box to complete each of the questions and answers below. The first one is an example:

أين متى ما ماذا هل

۱ **ماد۱** شربت ؟ شربتُ فنجان قهوة .

٢ ____ شربت القهوة ؟
 شربت القهوة في مكتبى .

٣ ــــــــ ذهبت إلى مطعم عربي ؟نعم ، ذهبت إلى مطعم عربي .

٤ _____ أكلتَ في المطعم ؟ أكلتُ سمكًا .

٥ _____ فعلت في مكتبك ؟كتبتُ خطابات .

٦ ____ اسمك ؟ اسمى أحمد حمدى .

٧ _____ سمعت عن السرقة ؟
 سمعت عن السرقة مساء .

12.3 JOINING SENTENCES TOGETHER

The policeman has now written Ahmed's alibi in his notebook. Read what he has written, paying special attention to the highlighted words:

firstly	أُوَّلًا
finally	أُخِيرًا
 . 7	

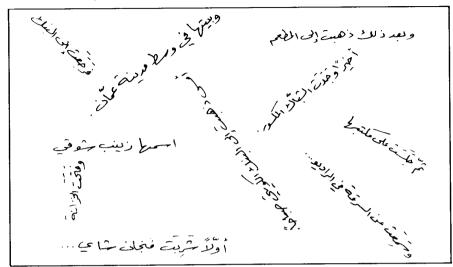
then	ثُم	after that
and/and so	فً	before th

after that	بَعْدَ ذٰلِكَ*
before that	قَبْلَ ذٰلِكَ

^{*} Notice that غذا has an alif above the first letter like غذا – see section 3.5.

Exercise 5

Unfortunately, the policeman's notes about Zainab were shredded by mistake. Can you write them out again in the right order?



12.4 SUMMARY OF VERBS IN THE PAST

All the verbs you have seen in this chapter describe things which have happened in the past. They are in the past tense(الـمَاضِي). You will have noticed that the end of the verb changes slightly depending on who carried out the action (depending on the subject of the verb).

Look at how this verb changes:

I found	وَجَدْتُ
you (masc.) found	وَجَد ْتَ
you (fem.) found	وَجَدْتِ
he found	وَجَدَ
she found	وَجَدَ ت ْ

Notice how Arabic does not use the personal pronouns (هـو/أنت/أنا) etc.) with the verb as the ending tells you if it is I, you, etc.

Look again at the list above. You can see that the verb always begins with وَجُد (wajad). This is the *stem* of the verb and contains the three root letters. (The root letters و/ج/ are connected with the meaning

of 'finding'.) The endings added to the stem tell you the subject of the verb:

* In spoken dialects the final vowel is dropped. So both أنتُ and أنتُ become وَجَدْت becomes هـو (wajadt); and هـو becomes وَجَدْت

You may have noticed that without the vowels the word:

وجدت

could have at least four different meanings:

However, common sense and the context will usually tell you which one it is.

Notice how most of the stems of the verbs are vowelled with two fathas (wajad). Sometimes, however, the second vowel can be a kasra (see the last two verbs in the table) or a damma. Do not spend too much time trying to remember these as in spoken dialects the vowels are variable and change from one verb to another and one country to another. The most important thing is to listen for the root letters.

Exercise 6

Write the correct form of the verb in the gap. The first is an example:

Exercise 7

Below you will find six things that the king did yesterday. First, read the sentences and think about in which order he might have done these things.

ذهب إلى مصنع السيّارات في جنوب المدينة .
ذهب إلى مدرسة كبيرة في وسط المدينة .
شرب فنجان قهوة مع المهندسين في المصنع .
خرج من القَصْر الملكيّ .
رجع إلى القَصْر الملكيّ .
جلس مع الأولاد .
سمع من المهندسين عن السيّارة الجديدة .

(قَصْر = palace)

Now listen to the news broadcast and decide which order is correct. Write the numbers next to the sentences. The first is already done for you.

Using as many of the phrases in the box below as possible, write a newspaper article about what the king did yesterday.

صباحًا أوّلاً بعد ذلك ف مساءً أخيرًا قبل ذلك ثمّ

Start like this:

خرج الملك من القصر الملكيّ أمس صباحًا و ...

12.5 USING A DICTIONARY

You have now reached the point where you should be buying a dictionary to help you expand your vocabulary by yourself and to look up words that you come across in magazines, newspapers etc.

It is possible to put Arabic in alphabetical order in two ways:

- 1. According to the order of the letters in a word as we do in English.
- 2. According to the order of the root letters in a word.

For example, imagine you want to find the word مكتب (maktab).

- with method 1. you would look under م/ك/ت/ب (reading right to left).

- with method 2. you would look under ك/ت/ب, the *root* letters.

Although the first method is becoming more common, especially as it means that alphabetisation can be carried out by a computer, the second method is still by far the most common and is used in all the major dictionaries.

So far, we have written the root letters separately: كُرُتُرُبُ. For the sake of convenience, most linguists and dictionaries use the stem of the past tense (see section 12.4) to express the root.

So we can say that كتب is the root of مفتاح is the root of مفتاح.

There are a number of Arabic-English dictionaries on the market, some designed for native speakers and some for learners of Arabic. I suggest that you buy one designed for learners as the others will not give you the vowels or the plurals (as a native speaker you are supposed to know them!). The most popular of the dictionaries designed for learners is *A dictionary of modern Arabic* by Hans Wehr (Librairie du Liban, 1961).

Appendix (i), which lists the letters in alphabetical order, will be a useful reference when you are using a dictionary.

Here is a page from one of the most popular dictionaries for learners, showing the entries under the root درس):

ردين

27

running head at top of page showing first root of page suture

جبل الدروزي durzī pl. خبل الدروزي durzī Druse ! جبل الدروزي durzī Druse ! خبل الدروزي durzī Druse ! خبل الدروزي durzī Druse ! transliteration showing vowels so in

durasa)u (dars) (to wipe out) blot out, obliterate, efface, ortinguish (** s.th.); to thresh (** grain); (to learn) study (** s.th... under s.o.); (ilm) alternative teacher, a professor); obe effaced, obliterateu, orotreu out, extinguished II to teach; to instruct (** s.o., ** in s.th.); III to study (** together with s.o.) VI to study (** s.th.) carefully together VII to become or be wiped out, blotted out, effaced,

obliterated, extinguished

extinction; — (pl. دروس (pl. دروس) study) study, studies; lesson, chapter (of a textbook); class, class hour period; lecture; lesson plurals experience, etc.) اعطی دروسا عن ا (a'ṭā) sons; دروسا من ا (manziliya) homework (of a pupil or student)

dirās bhreshing (of grain) دراس

دراسة الم dirāsa pl. -āt studies; study عالية دراسة ثانوية (āliya) collegiate studies; عالية (ṭānawīya) attendance of a secondary school, secondary education, high-school education; دراسة متوسطة (mutawassita) secondary education, high-school education (Syr.)

دراسی dirāsī of or pertaining to study or studies; scholastic, school; instructional, educational, teaching, tuitional إرسوم الله tuition fees; سنة دراسية (sana) academic year; scholastic year, school year

darīs dried clover دريس

عال الدرية 'ummāl ad-darīsa (eg.)
ailroad section gang, gandy dancers

دراس darrās pl. -ūn (eager) student

راسة مراسة darrāsa flail; threshing machine مصادة دراسة (haṣṣāda) combine

dirwas mastiff درواس

madāris² مدارس madrasa pl. مدرسة madrasah (a religious boarding school associated with a mosque); school مدرسة | (ibtidā'iya) the lower grades of a secondary school, approx. == junior high school; مدرسة أوامة (awwaliya) elementary school, grade school; مدرسة ان ية (tānawīya) secondary school, high school; مدرسة تجارية (tijārīya) commercial (harbīya) مدرسة حرية (dāķilīya) مدرسة داخلية نې military academ boarding school; (علية (علية) 'āliya, النابة (والمنائع college; والمنائع college; والمنائع common usages and handicraft; کری and expressions lege; المدرسة القدمة الshown (= intellectual or artistic movement)

madrasī scholastic, school مدرسي

teaching, instruction, tuition منه العدوس hai'at at-t. teaching staff; faculty, professoriate (of an academic institution)

درارس dāris pl. درارس dawāris² effaced, obliterated; old, dilapidated, crumbling | tajaddada dārisuhū to rise from one's ashes

مدرس mudarris pl. $-\bar{u}n$ teacher, instructor; lecturer | مدرس مساعد $(mus\bar{u}^*id)$ assistant professor

II to arm; to armor, equip with armor (* s.th.) V and VIII iddara'a to arm o.s., take up arms, put on armor

ادرع , dir' m. and f., pl. دروء durū', دروغ adru', ادراع ,adrā' coat of mail, hauberk; (suit of) plate armor; armor plate; armor; armature; (pl. وراء adrā') chemise Exercise 8 DICTIONARY WORK

(You will need a dictionary to do this exercise.)

Decide which are the root letters of these words (see section 11.1) and then find the words in your dictionary and write down the meaning. The first is an example:

المَعْنَى meaning	المَصْدَر root	الكَلِمَة word
minister	وزر	وَزِير
		سَفِير
		وزارة
		مَعْرَض
		رسَالة
		رِسه قد علاقة

12.6 STRUCTURE NOTES

The accusative case (النَّصْب)

So far you have learnt that the accusative case is used after کُم :

... how many teachers... how many medals...

(See section 10.7 for case endings.)

There are two new uses of the accusative in this chapter.

1. The accusative case is used for the *object* of a verb.

Hans Wehr A dictionary of modern Arabic (Librairie du Liban, 1961)

If your grammar is a bit rusty and you find it difficult to remember the difference between the subject and the object of a verb, try looking at the following English sentence:

The boy kicked the ball.

Which word is the verb? (kicked) Ask a question *without* 'did':

Who kicked the ball? (the boy)

The answer (the boy) is the *subject* of the verb. Now ask a question *with* 'did':

What did he kick? (the ball)

The answer (the ball) is the *object* of the verb. You should now be able to see that in this sentence:

is the subject of the verb and الخزانة is the object. In Arabic the subject is referred to as النفاعيل ('the one that did it') and the object as السَفْعُول به ('the one that had it done to it').

Look at these sentences taken from Ahmed and Zainab's alibis:

The verbs are right of the line and their objects are left of the line. (The subject is -I - but it is not written.) All the objects are in the accusative case. Notice that in the third sentence the object is written with an extra alif (see section 10.7), which is pronounced 'an'. This is

an accusative ending which is used with most *indefinite* nouns and adjectives. The main exceptions are:

- words that end in tā' marbūṭa (ö).
- words with the sound feminine plural ending (اات).
- words that end with a long vowel and a hamza (e.g. مساء).

This alif is one of the few examples of the case endings affecting the basic script and pronunciation.

2. The indefinite accusative is also used for adverbial expressions. In other words, for expressions where in English we might use the ending -ly, or phrases beginning with in or with:

This accusative ending is also often pronounced in spoken dialects.

Exercise 9 (optional)

Join the two halves of the sentences:

Now underline all the words which are in the accusative.

Vocabulary in Chapter 12

thief لصّ (لُصُوص) theft/robbery سَرقَة (سَرقات) investigation تَحْقِيق (تَحُقيقات) letter خِطَاب (خِطَابَات) palace قَصْر (قُصُور) *restaurant مَطْعَم * office/desk *cup فِنْجان tea شَاي coffee قَهُوَة fish سَمَك cola کُولاً water مَاء about/concerning with مَعَ to/towards إلى royal مَلَكِيّ yesterday أمْس morning صَبَاح evening مُسَاء %....when مَتَى

to go out/exit خَرَج to go ذَهَب to write کَتَب to drink شر ب to eat أَكَلَ to return/go back to open فَتَح to sit down جَلَس to hear سَـمِع to do فَعَل to find وَجَد firstly أَوَّلًا finally أُخيرًا after that بَعْدَ ذٰلك before that قَبْلَ ذٰلِك then ثُمَّ and/and so فَد ...

* These plurals will be covered in later chapters

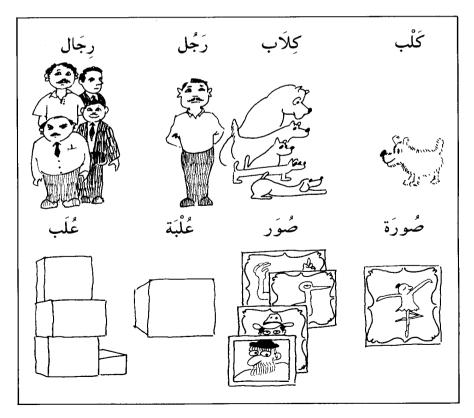
what...? (+verb) مَاذَا

WISH YOU

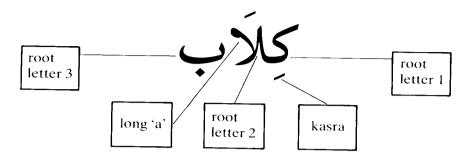
WERE HERE

13.1 PLURAL PATTERNS 3 AND 4

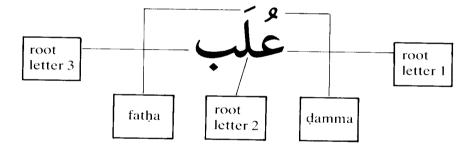
Look at the pictures and listen to the tape:



Pattern 3:



Pattern 4:



To express plural and other patterns in Arabic, the three root letters فعل are used (from the verb فعل – 'to do'). So we can say that the plural pattern 3 is the فعقل pattern. Here are the plural patterns you have met so far:

example

قُلُم نَعْال (Pattern 1) قلم
$$\rightarrow$$
 أَقْلام الْعُول (Pattern 2) قَلُم بيت \rightarrow بُيوت فُعُول (Pattern 3) كلب \rightarrow كِلاب فُعَال (Pattern 4) علبة \rightarrow عُلَب

Exercise 1

Here are some more words that fit into the plural patterns فعَل (4) and افعَل (3). Write the plurals as in the example.

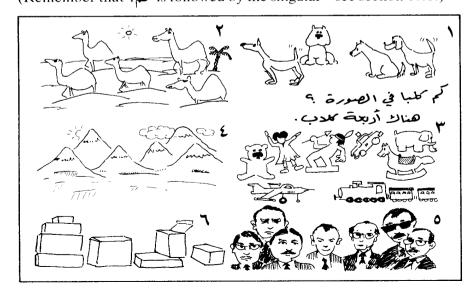
Pattern Plural Singular

Pattern	Plural	Singular	
فِعال	جِبَال	جَبَل	mountain
فِعال فُعَل		جَمَل	camel
فُعَل		لُعْبَة	toy
فِعال		بَحْر	sea
فِعال فُعَل		تُحْفَة	masterpiece/artefact
فُعَل		دَوْلَة	state/nation
فِعال		رِيح	wind (feminine)

Now check your answers and repeat the patterns after the tape. Do this several times so that you begin to hear the rhythm of the patterns.

Exercise 2

Write questions and answers as in the example.
(Remember that کم! is followed by the singular – see section 10.6.)

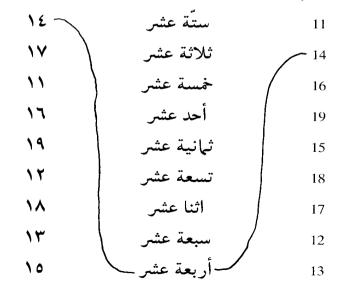


13.2 NUMBERS 11-100

Listen to the tape and look at the numbers:

١١ أحد عَشر
١٢ إثنا عَشر
١٣ ثلاثة عشر
١٥ خسة عشر
١٦ ستّة عشر
١٧ سبعة عشر
١٨ ثمانية عشر
١٩ تسعة عشر

Exercise 3
Draw lines between the columns as in the example.

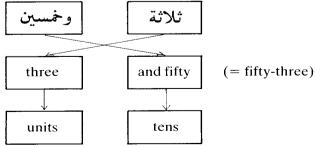


Now write out these numbers in words:

1 £	10
٥	٤
14	١٢
17	٩

Now listen to the numbers 20 upwards:





Exercise 4

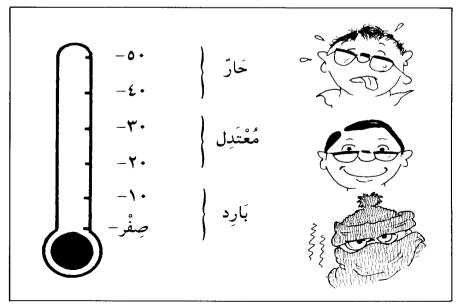
Write these numbers in figures, as in the example.

ا ستّة وأربعين → ٤٦
 ثلاثة وتسعين
 ا ثنان وسبعين
 ا ثنان وسبعين
 خسة وثلاثين
 مائة وأربعة وعشرين
 ا ثلاثة وتسعين
 ا مائة وأربعة وغسين

Remember: figures go left to right, as they do in English.

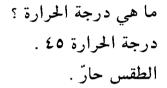
Note: The numbers 20 to 90 end with و (ūn) in 'proper' Modern Standard Arabic. However, most native speakers will use the ين (īn) ending all the time and so this is the more useful pronunciation to learn. See structure notes for more details.

Look at the thermometer:

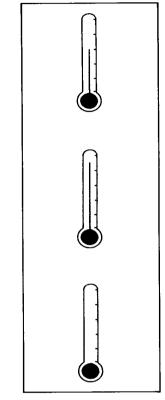


Now listen to the tape and look at the following:

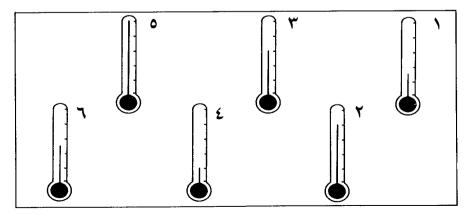
ما هي دَرَجة الحرارة ؟ درجة الحرارة ؟ الطقس مُعْتَدِل .



ما هي درجة الحرارة ؟ درجة الحرارة ؟ الحرارة صفر . الطقس بارد جدًّا !



Exercise 5
Following the examples above write questions and answers for these thermometers.



Look at this weather chart from a newspaper:



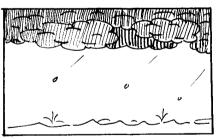
(Ashsharq Al-Awsat 13/8/88)

You can see two columns of figures. What do you think they are?

- The first (right-hand) column is the minimum ('smallest') temperature:

- The second is the *maximum* ('biggest') temperature:

Find Riyadh in the list of towns and look at its temperatures. Now listen to the following:



الطقس غَائم.

الطقس صَحْو.

Exercise 6 Now answer these questions about the chart:

٣ كيف حال الطقس في دُبْلِن ؟

٤ كيف حال الطقس في طوكيو ؟

» هل الطقس غائم في مَدْريد ؟

٦ هل الطقس بارد في القاهرة ؟

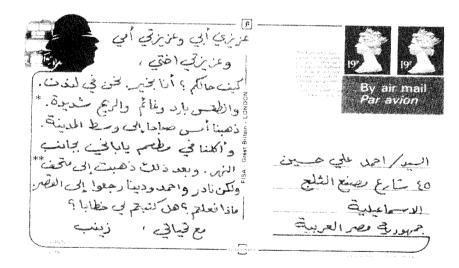
٧ هل درجة الحرارة الكبرى في هُونْج كُونْج ٣١؟

٨ هل درجة الحرارة الصغرى في البَحْرَيْن ٤٠؟

٩ هناك كم مدينة في القائمة ؟

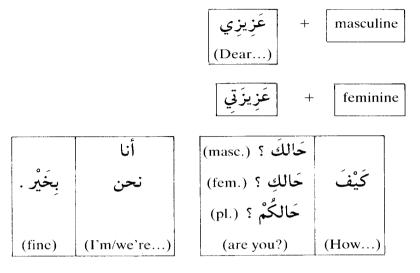
١٠ الطقس صحو في كم مدينة في القائمة ؟

رسالة من لندن MESSAGE FROM LONDON



^{*} strong (for wind etc.)

Opening phrases:



Closing phrases:

all the best ('with my greetings')

Plural verbs:

(نعن) كَتَبْنَا

 $(katab\bar{u}^*)$ $(katab\bar{u}^*)$

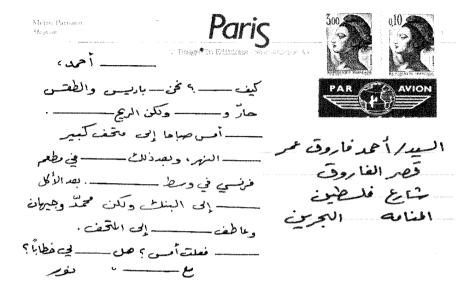
(katabtum) كُتبْتُمْ (katabtum)

* The extra alif written after the wāw is *not* pronounced and should not be confused with the alif with 2 fathas, which is pronounced 'an'. The alif after the wāw is completely silent and you can think of it like the 'b' in the English word 'lamb'.

^{**} museum

Exercise 7

Fill in the gaps in this postcard:



Exercise 8

Now write a postcard to a friend from a city you know.

13.5 STRUCTURE NOTES

The numbers 20, 30, 40 etc, are like the sound masculine plural. In the nominative they end in $\dot{\psi}$ \bar{u} n(a), and in the accusative and genitive they end in $\underline{\psi}$ \bar{u} n(a):

accusative and	nominative
genitive*	
عِشْرينَ	عِشْرُونَ
ثَلَاثِينَ	ثَلَاثُونَ
أَرْبَعِينَ	أَرْبَعُونَ

(* As with the sound masculine plural, spoken dialects only ever use the īn ending and you will often hear this ending used, even when Modern Standard is being spoken or read.) The numbers 11 upwards are followed by a singular noun:

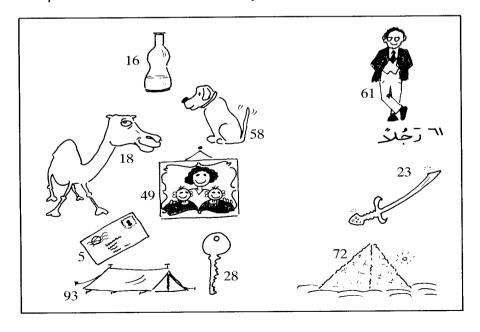
(* After the numbers 11-99, the singular noun is accusative and will have the extra alif if appropriate – see section 12.6.)

The fact that the numbers from 11 upwards are followed by a *singular* noun can seem strange to a learner. (It is as if in English we said 'three dogs' but 'thirty dog'.) It is very important to remember this as it occurs even in spoken dialects.

In 'proper' Modern Standard Arabic, when the numbers 11 upwards are used in a sentence they change slightly depending on whether they are in front of a masculine or feminine noun and where they are in the sentence. However, these changes are *very* complicated and so rarely seen or heard that most native speakers do not remember them. Be prepared, however, to hear or see slight variations occasionally.

Exercise 9 (optional)

Complete the exercise as in the example:



Vocabulary in Chapter 13

_		•	
عُلْبَة (عُلَب)	box/tin	عِشرين	twenty
لُعْبَة (لُعَب)	game/toy	ؿؘٟڵۘٲڎؚؚؽڹ	thirty
تُحْفَة (تُحَف)	masterpiece/artefact	ٲڔ۠ؠؘعِين	forty
دَوْلَة (دُوَل)	nation/state	خَمْسِين	fifty
رَجُل (رِجال)	man	سِتَين	sixty
جَبَل (جِبَال)	mountain	سَبْعِين	seventy
جَمَل (جَمال)	camel	ثَمَانِين	eighty
بَحْر (بِحَار)	sea	تِسْعِين	ninety
رِيح (رِياح)	wind (fem.)	مِائَة	hundred
- , - ,		_	
صِفْر	zero	حَالِ (أَحْوَال)	state/condition
أُحَد عَشَر	eleven	الطَّقس	the weather
إثْنَا عَشَر	twelve	دَرَجة الحَرَارَة	temperature
ثَلَاثَة عَشَر	thirteen		(degree of heat)
أُرْبَعَة عَشَرَ	fourteen	w , -	
خُمْسَة عَشَر	fifteen	حار ه ه ک	hot
سِتَّة عَشَر	sixteen	معتدِل	mild/moderate
سَبْعَة عَشَر	seventeen		cold
ثَمَانْيةً عَشَر	eighteen	صحو مَد	fine/clear
تِسْعَة عَشَر	nineteen	غائِم	cloudy/overcast
ŕ	عَزيزي/عَزيزَ تِي	(my) dear (o	pening of letter)
	عَزِيزِي/عَزِيزَ تِي كَيْفَ كيف حالك/حالكُمْ ؟	how	
	كيف حالك/حالكُمْ ؟	how are you?	
	,		

all the best ('with my greetings')

ALL THE

PRESIDENT'S MEN

أيًّام الْأُسْبُوع 14.1 DAYS OF THE WEEK أيًّام الأُسْبُوع Listen to the tape and look at the following:

Saturday يَوْم السَّبْت

Sunday يَوْم الْأَحَد

Monday يوم الإثنين

Tuesday يوم الثُّلاَثَاء

Wednesday يوم الأرْبِعَاء

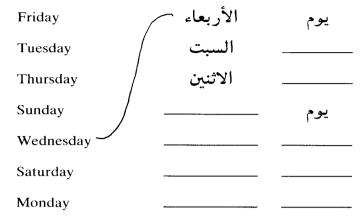
Thursday يوم الخمِيس

Friday يوم الجُمْعَة

You will also see the days of the week written without the word etc.

Exercise 1

Fill in the gaps and draw the lines, as in the example:



Listen to these sentences:

يوم الاثنين يوم الثلاثاء بَعْدَ سيوم الأربعاء

Exercise 2

Now complete these sentences:

يوم الجمعة فيل يوم السبت.

يوم الخميس بعد يوم الأربعاء.

يوم الأحد قطل يهم الاثنين.

يوم الثلاثاء قيل يوم الأربعاء.

يوم السبت بعد يوم المحدة

Write four more sentences of your own.

14.2 ARABIC WORDS IN ENGLISH

In Chapter 10 you met some English words that have been adopted into Arabic. There are also a number of words that have come the other way, usually making their way into English via Arabic literature and science or from contact, through trade, for example, between Arabic speakers and Europeans.

You have already met the word قطن from which we get our word 'cotton', and the word 'Arab' itself is derived from the Arabic.

Exercise 3

The English words on the left are all derived from Arabic. See if you can match them to the Arabic words on the right.

algebra	زَعْفَرَان
emir (prince)	الكُحُول
saffron	وَزِير
alkali	الجَبْر
vizier (minister)	َيُّر هِنْدِيٍّ*
tamarind	أمِير
alcohol	القِلْي

(* literally 'Indian dates')

14.3 PLURAL PATTERN 5

Listen and repeat these words with their plurals:

plural	singula
وُزَرَاء	وَزِير
أُمَرَاء	أمير

Pattern 5:



Exercise 4

Listen to the plurals of the two words above until you can hear and repeat the pattern. Then listen to the words below, pausing after each word. Say the plural, following the same pattern, and then release the pause button to check your answer.

ambassador سَفِيرِ president/chairman رَئيسِ leader

Repeat the exercise until you are sure of the pattern and then write down the plurals. Read the box below before you start to write.

Hamza as a root letter

Notice that رَئِيس and رَئِيس both have hamza as one of their root letters.

The fact that hamza is one of the root letters does not make any difference to the patterns except that the letter that carries the hamza may change if the hamza does not fall at the beginning of a word:

raʾīs رَئِيس ruʾasāʾ

Hamza is listed in the dictionary under alif. So for the root letters $\omega/z/\omega$ you should look up ω/ω .

Pattern 5 is used for most words referring to *male* humans which have the pattern فعيل (or فعيل) in the singular. It cannot be used for words that are not male humans. Note that a *female* minister, ambassador etc. will have a tā' marbūṭa in the singular. The plural is made by using the sound feminine plural:

plural	singular	
وَزِيرَات	ۅؘؚۘڔؚ۬ؠڔؘۘة	(female minister)
أُمِيرَات	أميرة	(princess)

Exercise 5

Write out the feminine singulars and plurals for the words in exercise 4.

Exercise 6

presidency/ chairmanship

All the words in this section refer to people. You can also make general nouns from the same root letters using the pattern:

فِعَالَة

Complete the table below as in the example:

meaning	فِعَالَة	root letters
ministry	وزارة	و/ذ/ر
embassy		
emirate		
agency		
leadership		

14.4 WHAT DID THE PRESIDENT DO LAST WEEK? ماذا فعل الرئيس في الأسبوع الماضي

Look at the president's diary for last week:

الاثنسين المصنع المصنع المحديد	السبت الأحد اجتماع مع السفير الرثيـة الفرنسي البريطانية في مكبتي
اجتماع مع السعيرة الإيطالية	معرض البنور موتم المدرّسين العربية العرب العرب الشسلانساء
الخميس مدے عمل ع الوزراء	الأمير محمود الأمير مسيون المفتر في مكتبي المقر
يتاع الملحق	المتماع مع سفلاد المتماع

حِزْب (أَحْزَاب)* (political) party

Now find Saturday (الأحد) and Sunday (الأحد). Listen to a reporter asking the president's press agent about what he did on these days:



مكتبه .	ۇ ،	الرئيسة	*إِسْتَقْبَلَ (الرئيس)
القصر .	ي	الوزير	(received)
		السفير	

^{*} This type of verb will be covered in more detail in Chapter 19.

Exercise 7

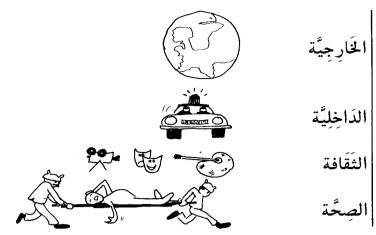
Looking at the diary, complete the questions and answers for Monday and Tuesday.

ماذا ____الرئيس ____الاثنين ؟
حضر افتتاح ____ صباحًا وعقد ___ مع _____
ظهرًا .
____الرئيس ___الثلاثاء ؟
استقبل ____في __صباحًا وبعد ذلك ____
ــــمع ___الأحزاب ___ .

Now write similar questions and answers for Wednesday and Thursday.

مِجْلُس الوُزْرَاء 14.5 THE CABINET

(نَائِب رئيس الوزراء ←) رئيس الوزراء
وزير الدِفَاع
الإقْتِصَاد
الزِدَاعة
الزِرَاعة
الضِنَاعة
الصِنَاعة
التَعْلِيم



Exercise 8

Look at the newspaper headlines below. Decide which *two* people are the subject of each headline.



Now put the people in the correct order in one of the tables below to make sentences. Two examples are already done for you.

·Y		\	استقبل		
Y	رسالة إلى		كتب		

استقبل الأمير عبدالله سفير مالطا.

كتب وزير العدل رسالة إلى الرئيس العراقي .

Exercise 9 DICTIONARY WORK

Use your dictionary to complete the following table. (If you do not yet have a dictionary, check the answer section before moving on.)

 plural pattern
 plural meaning
 root letters
 word

 مُفْتَشْ
 عام عمر م
 عام مرم
 عام مرم
 مُسَاعِد
 مُسَاعِد
 مُسَاعِدُون

 شَأْن
 عُسْكَريّ
 ع/س/ك/ر*
 ع/س/ك/ر*
 ع/س/ك/ر*
 ع/س/ك/ر*

Now read the article below and decide if the sentences are true or false.

الأمير حسن عقد جلسة عمل مع وزير دفاع بريطانيا

الرياض: استقبل الأمير حسن النائب الثاني لرئيس مجلس الوزراء ووزير الدفاع والمفتش العام السعودي في مكتبه بالرياض صباح أمس وزير الدفاع البريطاني جورج سيمون وبعد ذلك عقد الأمير حسن ووزير الدفاع البريطاني جلسة عمل

وحضر الجلسة من الجانب السعودي الأمير أشرف نائب وزير الدفاع ، والمفتش العام والأمير محمد مساعد وزير الدفاع ومساعد وزير الدفاع للشؤون العسكرية السيد عثمان حمدي .

- ١ وزير الدفاع البريطانيّ اسمه جُورْج سِيمُون.
 - ٢ استقبل الأمير حَسَن الوزير البريطاني .
- ٣ استقبل الأمير الوزير في مكتبه أمس ظهرًا .
 - ٤ الأمير حَسن هو رئيس الوزراء.

٥ بعد الاستقبال عقد الأمير حسن وجورج سيمون جلسة عمل .

٦ الأمير حسن هو وزير الدفاع والمفتّش العامّ.

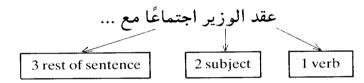
٧ حضر الجلسة نائب وزير الدفاع ومساعدان.

الأمير أشرف هو نائب وزير الثقافة .

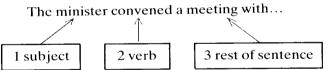
14.6 WORD ORDER

You have probably noticed that in Arabic the verb usually comes *first*, before the subject or the rest of the sentence. This is unlike English where we always put the verb *after* the subject:

Arabic order:

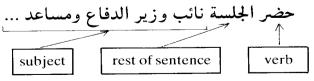


English order:



However, unlike English, in Arabic you *sometimes* see the verb and the subject the other way around. This is especially true in less formal Arabic as it reflects what happens in the spoken dialects where the verb usually comes second. For the moment, it is better for you to stick to the more common order above.

You could also find the rest of the sentence put between the verb and the subject:



This is often done when the subject is very long, as in the sentence above.

^{*} This word has four root letters. See structure notes.

Now look at these three sentences from the article in exercise 9:

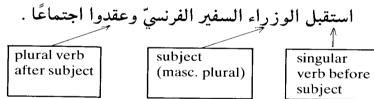
استقبل الأمير حسن وزير الدفاع البريطانيّ ... عقد الأمير حسن ووزير الدفاع البريطانيّ جلسة عمل . حضر الجلسة ... الأمير أشرف ... والأمير محمّد ... والسيّد عثمان حمدى .

How many people are the subject of each sentence?

- The first sentence has only one subject: الأمير حسن
- The second sentence has two subjects: الأمير حسن ووزير الدفاع
- The third sentence has three subjects: الأمير أشرف والأمير محمّد

All the verbs, however, are in the *singular* (masculine). This is because when a verb comes before its subject it will always be singular. The verb will only change according to whether the subject is masculine or feminine, but not according to whether it is singular, dual or plural.

Verbs that come *after* the subject will be singular for a singular subject and plural for a plural subject:



Exercise 10

Choose a verb from the box to fill each gap in the sentences, using the masculine, feminine, singular or plural as appropriate. You can use a verb more than once. The first sentence is an example.

١ خَرَجَ السفراء من السفارة وذَهَبُوا إلى القصر الملكي .

٢ ــــالوزير جلسة عمل مع السفير اليمني .

٣ ــــــالزعماء إلى المصنع و ـــــعن السيّارة الجديدة .

٤ _____ الرئيسة على مكتبها و ____ رسالة إلى وزير الدفاع .

٥ ____الرجال سمكًا في المطعم وبعد ذلك ____زجاجات كولا .

٦ ____وزيرة الاقتصاد الفنلنديّة افتتاح بنك جديد.

٧ ____زينب إلى البنك و ____الشبّاك المكسور.

٨ ماذا _____الرئيسة يوم الثلاثاء ؟

14.7 STRUCTURE NOTES

Plurals

The فعلاء pattern is diptote and so the case endings will be as the table in section 11.6.

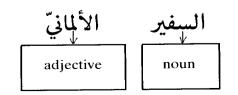
Notice that يُوْم (day) has a slightly unusual plural: أَيَّام . This is actually the أَيُّام pattern as in قلم/أقلام except أَيُّام changes to

Words with four root letters

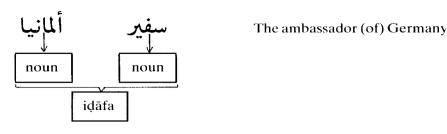
There are a few words that have four root letters, such as فننجان, and مسكريّ. These are called quadriliterals.

idāfa

Look at these two phrases:

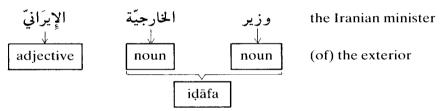


The German ambassador

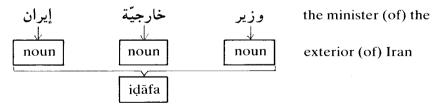


These are two different ways of saying the same thing (as is the English). The first way uses an adjective to describe the nationality of the ambassador, and the second an idafa construction (two or more nouns together). Remember that only the last noun in an idafa can have to). So, in the second phrase above, the word udoes not have to). So, in the second phrase above, the word udoes not have to), even though it means the ambassador.

If you want to use an adjective to describe an idafa, the adjective must come after the whole idafa. You cannot put an adjective in the middle of the nouns in an idafa:



You could also use an idafa with *three* nouns which would have the same meaning as the above:



Notice how the word خارجيّة has lost its ال as it is no longer the last word in the idafa.

Exercise 11 (optional)

Look back at the headlines in exercise 8. List all the examples of phrases using an adjective for nationalities and those using just an idafa. One example of each is already done for you.

adjective

iḍāfa only

نائب وزير الخارجيّة الإيرانيّ

سفير مالطا

Now reverse the form of the phrases, as in the examples:

Vocabulary in Chapter 14

week أُسبُوع

day يَوْم (أَيَّام)

(يوم) الإثْنَيْن Monday

Tuesday (يوم) الثُلاَثَاء

Wednesday (يوم) الأَرْبِعَاء

سير) الخَمِيس Thursday

Friday (يوم) الجُمْعَة

Saturday (يوم) السَبْت

Sunday (يوم) الأَحَد

after بَعْدَ

before قَبْلَ

minister وَزير (وُزَرَاء)

ministry وزَارة (وزارات)

prince/emir أُمِير (أُمَرَاء)

emirate إمارة (إمارات)

ambassador سَفِيرِ (سُفَرَاء)

embassy سِفَارة (سفارات)

president/head رَئِيس (رُؤَسَاء)

presidency/chairmanship رئاسَة (رئاسات)

leader زَعِيم (زُعَهَاء)

leadership زعامات)

agent وَكِيل (وُكَلَاء)

agency وكَالَة (وكالات)

inspector مُفَتِّش (مُفَتِّشُون)

aide/helper مُسَاعِد (مُسَاعِدُون)

deputy/vice نَائِب

the Cabinet بَجْلِس الوُزَرَاء (council of ministers)

noon ظُهْر

in the afternoon ظُهْرًا/بَعْدَ الظُهْر

to convene/hold (meeting)

to attend حَضَرَ

to receive إَسْتَقْبَلَ

meeting اِجْتِهَاع

(working) session جَلْسَة (عَمَل)

conference مُؤْتَمَر

exhibition/show مَعْرَض

opening ceremony إفْتِتَاح

defence الدفّاع

the economy الاقتصاد

agriculture الزرَاعَة

industry الصِنَاعَة

education التَعْلِيم

justice العَدْل

the exterior (foreign affairs)

the interior (home affairs)

culture/the arts الثَّا

health الص

affair/matter شَأْنِ (شهوون)

(political) party حِزْب (أَحْزَاب)

general عَامّ

military عَسْكَرِيّ

REVISION

Exercise 1

Fill in the missing numbers below: (Remember to start with the right-hand column.)

٣.		111	أحد عشر	\	واحد
	أربعي <i>ن</i>		اثنا عشر		اثنان
	خمسين	١٣	ثلاثة	٣	ثلاثة
		١٤		٤	
٧٠			خسة عشر		خمسة
	ثہانین	١٦		٦	
٩.				v	
90	وتسعين		عشر		ثهانية
	ثلاثة وأربعين		تسعة		
3	9		عشرين		عشرة

Exercise 2

Now write down the numbers you hear on the tape. The first is an example.

						9 ٤	()	
Exercise 3								
Can you finish these se	equen	ces of	numl	bers?				
		17	١.	٨	٦	٤	۲	()
	· 	١٨	١٥	١٢	٩	٦	٣	(۲
				٤٤	44	**	11	(٣
		٤٢	30	44	41	١٤	Y	(٤
	۱۳	٨	٥	٣	۲	1	1	(0

Exercise 4

The following is an extract from a newspaper about aid planes. The Arabic for aid plane is طَائِرَة مَعُونَة (tā'ira ma وūna – literally 'plane of aid'). Firstly, look at the article and answer the questions on page 200 in English:

ِطوم قرائد -ا		۱۱۲ طائرة معونة
برق الأوسط » ات المعونات العربية		إلى السودان
سلت إلى الخسرطوم		0 , _g, <u>0</u> _;
طائرة نقلت معونات	حتى أمس ١١٣	
	بلغ وزنها ۲۲۹۱	•
عدد الطائرات	الدولة	
٥١	الستعودية	
18	مصر	
\\	الكويت	
١.	اليمن	
٥	ليبيا	
٣	الجزائر	
۲	اليمن الجنوبي	
1	تونس	
٤	بلجيكا	
٣	بريطانيا	
٣	ايطاليا	
۲	تركيا	
۲	نيجيريا	
1	الولايات المتحدة	
1	اليونان	
\	اليونيسيف	•

(17/8/88)

- 1. Where are the aid planes going?
- 2. How many aid planes have been sent altogether?
- 3. How many tonnes of aid have so far been sent?
- 4. Which country has sent the most planes?
- 5. Which western country has sent the most planes?
- 6. Which newspaper did this article appear in?

Now look at the list of countries and answer these questions in Arabic. (Give short answers.)

Remember:

+ singular

3 to 10 + plural

11 upwards + singular

For 2 things, use the dual: طائرة (2 planes)

For 1 thing, use the singular with no number: طائرة

١ كم دولة في القائمة ؟

٢ هل فرنسا في القائمة ؟

٣ هل مصر بين السعودية واليمن في القائمة ؟

٤ كم طائرة للسعودية ؟

٥ كم طائرة لليبيا ؟

٦ هل لليمن عشر طائرات ؟

٧ كم طائرة لنيجيريا ؟

٨ هل لمصر ١٤ طائرة ؟

٩ هل الأمريكا طائرة ؟

١٠ هل لسورية طائرة ؟

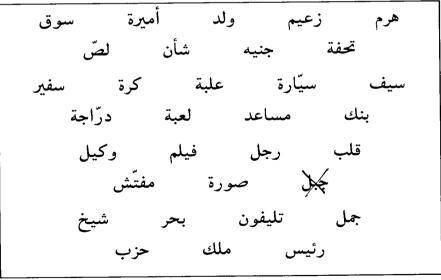
Exercise 5

So far you have met seven different plurals:

example

مدرّس $ ightarrow$ مدرّسون	(sound masculine plural)	- ون
مدرّسة ← مدرّسات	(sound feminine plural)	_ ات
قلم $ ightarrow$ أقلام		أفعال
بیت ← بیوت		فُعول
		فِعال
دولة → دُوَل		فُعَل
وزير ← وزراء		فُعَلاء

Write these words you know with their plurals in the correct columns below, as in the example:



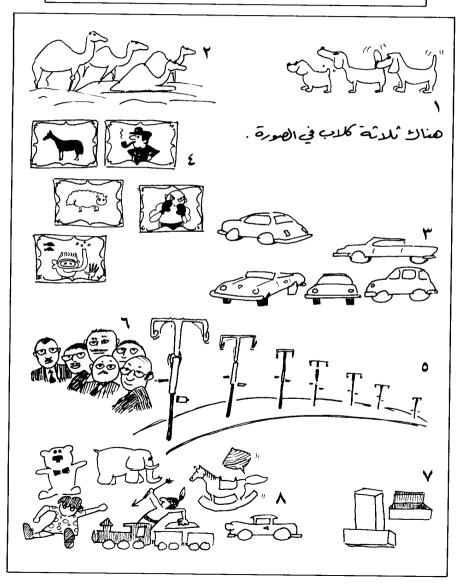
فعلاء	فُعَل	فعال	فعول	أفعال	_ ات	_ ون
		جَبِل ﴾		-		
n	km	مبال		-		

Exercise 6

Now write sentences for each picture, as in the example.

Remember:

number 3-10 with \$\vec{\sigma}\$ + masculine noun number 3-10 without \$\vec{\sigma}\$ + feminine noun



Exercise 7

Below is a list of prices for a magazine in different countries:

* لبنان ۱۰۰ ل.ل. * سوريا ۱۵ ل.س. * الأردن ديناراً واحداً * العراق ۱۲۰ فلساً. * الكويت ۱۲۰ فلساً. * السعودية ۱۲ ريالاً. * البحرين ۱۲۰۰ فلساً. * قطر ۱۰ ريالاً. * البحرين ۱۲۰۰ فلساً. * قطر ۱۰ ريالاً. * البمنان ۱۰ درهماً. * عصر ۱۰ ريال. * اليمن الشمالي ۱۰ ريالاً. * البينا الديمقراطي ۱۲۰۰ مليماً. * مصر ۲ جنيه * السودان ۱۲۰۰ جنيه. * لبينا ۲٫۰۰ درهماً.

* CYPRUS; 1.75 £C * AUSTRALIA: 5 Aus. \$ * U.K.: 2.5 £ * CANADA: 5 C \$ * FRANCE: 25 F.F. * W. GERMANY: 8 D.M. * GREECE: 200 Drachma * ITA-LY: 5000 Lir * SPAIN: 590 Peseta * SWITZERLAND: 8 F.S. * U.S.A.: 4\$ للأفراد ۱۰۰ دولار * سعر خاص للطلاب.

(Notice that Arabic uses a *comma* for the decimal point (i.e. 1.56 is written 1,07).)

Look at the list and complete the following table:

currency	country
عملة	دولة
رِيال	السعودية
	عُيان
مَلِيم	
ليرة لبنانية	
فَلْس*	العراق
	عملة ريال مَلِيم ليرة لبنانية

^{*} usually pronounced 'fils'

Exercise 8

Match the objects to the material they are made from:

غَهُب كرسي ً
 غُطُن خاتم ميباك ميباك ئشب قميص ئ
 زُجَاج ميدالية

Now write four more sentences as in the example:

هذا الكرسيّ خشبيّ.

Remember the difference between:

هذا الكرسيّ خشبيّ . (This chair is wooden.)

هذا كرسيّ خشبيّ . (This is a wooden chair.)

both of which would be possible here, and:

هذا الكرسي الخشبي (this wooden chair)

which is not a sentence.

Exercise 9

Complete this table:

meaning

feminine

masculine

green

خَضْ َ اء

ً أخضر

اُزْرَق

white

black

أصفر

red

Now choose a colour to fill each gap in the sentences below:

Remember:

ALWAYS USE THE FEMININE SINGULAR FOR THE PLURAL OF OBJECTS AND ANIMALS.

۱ باب بیتی ____ .

٢ سيّارتي ____.

٣ البحر ____في شرق مصر.

٤ وجدتُ طهاطم ____في السوق .

٥ هذا الكتاب ____و ____و ____ .

Exercise 10

in the past:*

(انا) كَتَبْتُ

(أنتَ) كَتَبْتَ

(انتِ) كَتَبْتِ

هو) كَتَبَ

اِهي) كَتَبَتْ

ُنحن) كَتَبْنَا

(أنتم) كَتَبْتُمْ

(* See appendix (ii) for complete verb tables.)

Now write the correct form of the verb in brackets to complete the story.

Remember:

- 1. You do not need to write the pronoun, just the right form of the verb.
- 2. The verb is always singular before the subject.

الأسبوع الماضي ____(ذهب) أحمد وفاطمة وصاحبها الألماني هَانْز إلى مصر و ____(وصل*) إلى القاهرة يوم السبت مساءً. يوم الأحد ____(خرج) الأصْحَاب صباحًا و ____(ذهب) إلى المتحف المصري في وسط المدينة و ____(وجد) هناك معرضًا لِتُحَف فِرْعُونِيَّة. بعد ذلك ____(ذهب) إلى مطعم بجانب المتحف و ____(أكل) أحمد وفاطمة سمكًا من البحر الأحمر ولكن هانيز و ____(أكل) هامْبُركر. يوم الاثنين ____(ذهب) أحمد وهانز إلى الأهرام ولكن فاطمة ____(جلس) على البلكون و ____(كتب) خطابًا لأمّها. أخيرًا ____(رجع) الأصحاب يوم الثلاثاء.

* to arrive: وَصَل

Exercise 11

Listen to the interview with the minister for the economy and fill in the gaps in his diary. Listen once without writing and then again, pausing if necessary.

الخميس	الأربعاء	الثلاثاء	الاثنين	الأحد
وزير الاقتصاد في المنارة .	الاسلامية	مؤتمر وزر ^{اء} الاقتصاد العرب		الياباني المجديد
	الأمير أحمد	ا حماع مع ورير الزراعة في مكتب	العير	حلة عمل مع

Now write eight questions using the diary and as many of the words below as you can. Two examples have been written for you.

متى أين هل ماذا لِلَاذَا*

* why? (literally 'for what?')

متى حضر الوزير مؤتمر وزراء الاقتصاد العرب ؟ لماذا ذهب إلى وزارة الزراعة يوم الثلاثاء ظهرًا ؟

Vocabulary in Chapter 15

aeroplane طَائِرَة (طَائِرَات)

aid/relief/help مَعُونَة (مَعُونَات)

price سِعْر (أَسْعَار)

balcony بَلْكُون

magazine مَجَلَّة (مَجَلَّات)

to arrive وَصَلَ

؟ اغْلَا ؟ why?

EVERY DAY

كم السَّاعَة ؟ ? 16.1 WHAT'S THE TIME?

كم الساعة ؟ الساعة السابعة .



كم الساعة ؟ الساعة الواحدة .



كم الساعة ؟ الساعة الثالثة.



كم الساعة ؟ الساعة العاشرة .

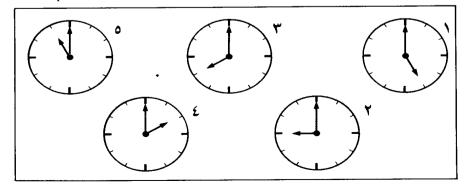


الوَاحِدَة الثَانِيَة الثَالِثَة الرَابِعَة الخَامِسَة السَادِسَة السَابِعَة الشَامِنَة التَاسِعَة العَاشِرَة العَاشِرَة الثَانِيَة عَشَرَة الثَانِيَة عَشَرَة الساعة

etc. literally means 'the fourth/fifth hour' etc. الساعة الرابعة / الخامسة etc. literally means 'the fourth/fifth hour' etc. الرابعة is feminine. If it were used with a masculine word it would lose the tā' marbūṭa: اليوم 'the fourth day'.

Exercise 1

Write questions and answers for these times:



Look at the following and listen to the tape:





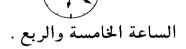


الساعة الثالثة والنصف.



() الساعة السادسة والثلث .







) الساعة الخامسة إِلَّا رُبْعًا .



الساعة الثانية عشرة إِلَّا تُلثًا.



🏏) الساعة العاشرة وخمس دَقَائِق .



الساعة الواحدة وعشر دَقَائِق .

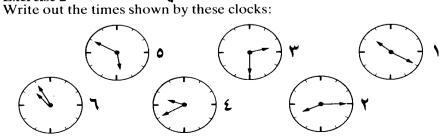


الساعة السادسة إلا خسة وعشرين دَقِيقَة



الساعة الخامسة وخمسة وثلاثون دقيقة . or *

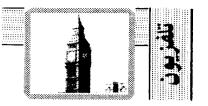
Exercise 2



Exercise 3

Look at the schedule of television programmes:

(programme = بَرْنَامَج barnāmaj)



٥٥, ١٠ رسوم متحركة.

١١,٠٠ دلا تغير عالى، _ فعلم سطولة

روي تاتوم وادي كرامر ١٢,٣٠ ، المنصبة الكبيري، _ بيراميج

ومباريات رياضية مختلفة حتى الساعة

 ٤, ٤ ، فليبر، فيلم بطولة تشك كونورز ولوك هابلين وكاشرين ماجوير.

٠٠,٥ الاخيار.

٥,٢٠ «الدرجية الاولى» - بسرنساميج مسابقات لطلاب الدارس

٧,١٠ سهرة السبت مع مايكل بارى مور ـبرنامج منوعات.

٨٠٠٠ استمر يا دكتور ـ احد سلسلة الافلام الشهيرة بطولة فرانكي هوارد

٣٠, ٩ الاختار و الرياضة.

٠٤, ٩ نادني بقولك يا سند _مسلسل.

١٠,٤٠ بطوَّلة الحولف الأمريكية.

١٢,٠٠ «الضوء» ـ فيلم يطولة لوييد بريدجز وابنه بو بريدجز

Now answer these questions, as in the example:

١ متى الرسوم المتحرّكة ؟

هي الساعة الحادبة عشرة الله خمس دقائق.

٢ هل هناك أخبار قبل الساعة السادسة ؟

٣ متى الأخبار مساءً ؟

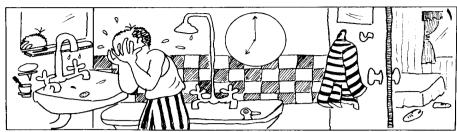
٤ كم فيلمًا في هذا اليوم ؟

٥ هل هناك فيلم صباحًا ؟

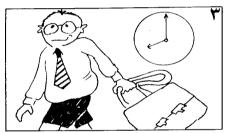
٦ هل هناك رياضة بعد الساعة الثامنة ؟

٧ متى الفيلم الثالث ؟

گُلّ يوم 16.2 EVERY DAY كُلّ يوم



كُلَّ يوم يَغْسِل محمود وَجْههُ الساعة السابعة .



ثمَ يَخْرُج من البيت الساعة الثامنة.



& Emphison was mid!

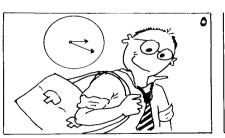
وَيذْهَب إلى المدرسة

بالأوتوبيس.

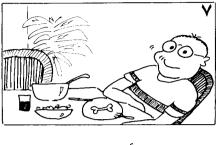
وَيْأَكُل الإِفْطار الساعة السابعة والنصف.



الثالثة والثلث.



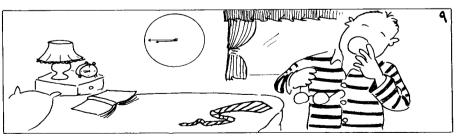
يَرْجَع الساعة



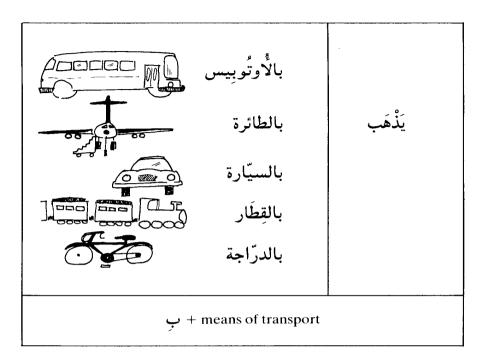
وبعد ذلك يأكل العشاء.

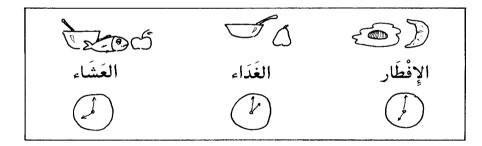


ويَشْرَب زجاجة كولا ولكن أخته فاطمة تشرَب فنجان شاي .



أخيراً يَلْبَس البيجاما الساعة التاسعة إلا ربعاً .



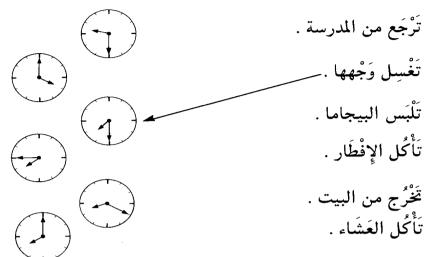


كلّ يوم يَشْرَب محمود زجاجة كولا . كلّ يوم تَشْرَب فاطمة فنجان شاي .

> (هو) ایشرب (هي) آشرب

Exercise 4

Listen to what Mahmoud's sister, Fatima, does every day and match the sentences to the times.



Now write a paragraph about what Fatima does every day. Use some of the words and phrases you know to join the sentences. Begin like this:

كلّ يوم تغسل فاطمة وجهها الساعة السابعة والنصف وبعد ذلك ...

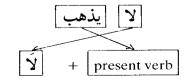
EListen to the tape and look at the pictures:



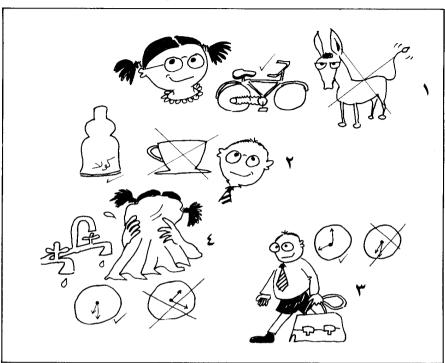
لاً يذهب محمود إلى المدرسة بالسيّارة ، يذهب بالأوتوبيس .



لاً تشرب فاطمة زجاجة كولا ، تشرب فنجان شاي .



Exercise 5
Write sentences for these pictures:







المُضَارِع Present verbs

'ashrab	أشرَب	(أنا)
<i>ta</i> shrab	تَشرَب	(أنتَ)
<i>ta</i> shrab <i>īna</i> *	ڗۘۺ۠ۯڽؚؽؘ	(أنتِ)
<i>ya</i> shrab	يَشرَب	(هو)
<i>ta</i> shrab	تَشرَب	(هي)

^{*} This becomes tashrabī in spoken dialects.

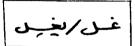
Vocabulary learning

Notice that in the present tense the middle vowel changes from one verb to the next:

There is usually no way of telling which vowel to use, but the dictionary will show this:

> غسل قasala(i)(gasl) to wash (م ب ه ب s.o., s.th. with), launder (ه ب s.th. with); to cleanse, clean (a s.th., e.g., the teeth); to purge, cleanse, clear, wash (a s.th., of); to wash (a against s.th.) II to wash thoroughly (a, s.o., s.th.) VIII to wash (o.s.); to take a bath, bathe; to perform the major ritual ablution (i.e., a washing of the whole body; Isl. Law)

It is best to learn the past and present verbs together. If you are using the card system, write the middle vowel on the present verb:



Exercise 6

Write about what you do every day:

Note: Whenever two alifs combine in Arabic, they are written as one with a *madda* sign (\tilde{z}) above:

$$(I drink)$$
 = أَشْرَب = أَشْرَب (I eat) = آكُل = آكُل = أكل المائة الم

في المدرسة 16.3 AT SCHOOL الدُرُ وس lessons



Take care to distinguish the difference in the following words usually used for sport and mathematics/arithmetic:

الخميس	الأربعاء	الثلاثاء	الاثنين	الأحد	السبت
	نْ إِنْ	€=∀+∀			
€= ∀+∀		ābc	تْ ب	E=7+7	ٽ ب آ
—					غداء —

Look at the timetable and listen to the teacher asking her class about what they study:



يَـدُّرُسُونَ التـاريخ من الساعة الثـامنة والنصف حَتَّى السـاعـة العاشرة .

present verbs (plural)

 nadrus
 نگرۇس

 tadrusūna*
 تُدْرُسُونَ

 vadrusūna*
 يَدْرُسُونَ

Exercise 7

Look at the school timetable and write questions and answers as in the example:

١ يوم الثلاثاء ظهرًا ؟

ماذا تدرسون يوم المكدثاء ظهرًا؟ ندرس الموسيقى من الساعة الواحدة ونصف حتى الساعة الثالثة.

٢ يوم الثلاثاء صباحًا ؟

٣ يوم الاثنين ظهرًا ؟

٤ يوم الخميس صباحًا ؟

Now make up two more questions and answers of your own.

Exercise 8

Now complete this paragraph. (Remember: use a *singular verb before* the subject.)

كلّ يوم ___ الأولاد من بيوتهم الساعة الثامنة الآ ربعًا و ____ إلى المدرسة بالأوتوبيس المدرسيّ . يدرسون حتى الساعة ____ و بعد ذلك ____ الغداء . بعد الغداء يدرسون من ___ الـواحدة والنصف ___ الساعة الثالثة ثمّ ___ من المدرسة إلى بيوتهم .

^{*} Become tadrusū and yadrusū in spoken dialects.

16.4 STRUCTURE NOTES

المُضَارع Present tense

Those parts of the present tense that do not have a suffix (extra letters on the end) end with a damma (4), but this is rarely pronounced. The verb with its full endings would be:

'ashrabu	أشرب	(اَنا)
tashrabu	تشربُ	(أنتَ)
tashrabīna	تشربِي <i>ن</i> َ	(أنتِ)
yashrabu	يشربُ	(هو)
tashrabu	تشربُ	(هي)
nashrabu	نشربُ	(نحن)
tashrabūna	تشربُونَ	(أنتم)
yashrabūna	يشربُونَ	(هم)

Be prepared, also, in spoken dialects to hear a 'b' sound before present verbs ('bashrab' - 'I drink'; 'byaghsil' - 'he washes' etc.).

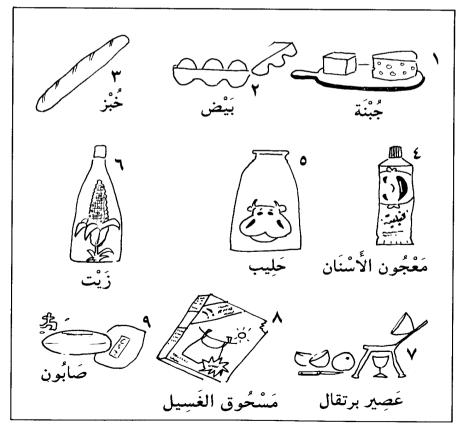
Vocabulary in Chapter 16

dinner/supper عَشَاء

EATING AND

DRINKING

عِنْدُ البَقَّالِ 17.1 AT THE GROCER'S عِنْدُ البَقَّالِ Look at the pictures and listen to the tape:

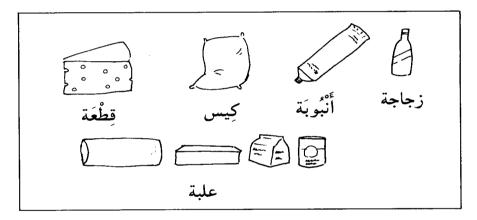


Exercise 1

Here are some more things you might buy in a grocer's shop. The Arabic is very similar to the English. Can you match them?

biscuits الْرُزِّ shampoo

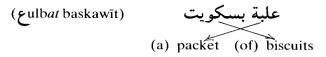
rice rice cake sugar sugar macaroni/spaghetti



(Notice that علية is used for the English 'box', 'packet', 'tin' and 'carton'.)

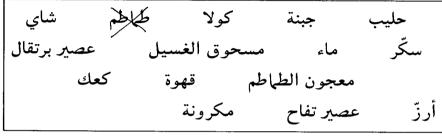


Remember that the tā' marbūṭa is pronounced in these iḍāfa phrases:



Exercise 2

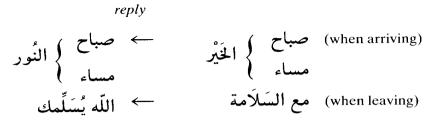
Write the words in the box in one of the columns, as in the example. (There may be more than one correct answer.)



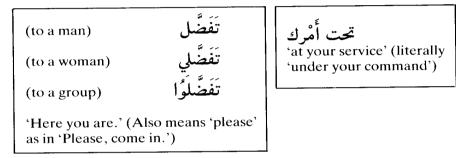
أنبوبة	قطعة	کیس	علبة	زجاجة
ma		~~~	طماطم	

Now listen to this conversation:





There is no equivalent of 'Good afternoon'. مساء الخير is usually used in the afternoon as well as the evening.



 $(y\bar{a})$ is a word used before someone's name or title when you are talking to him/her. The nearest English equivalent is 'O' or 'Hey', but $y\bar{a}$ is used much more frequently and is not as informal as 'Hey'.

Exercise 3

Read the bubbles and think about which order they should be in:



Now listen to the tape and write numbers next to the bubbles. The first is done for you.

في المطعم 17.2 IN THE RESTAURANT

Listen to these words, which are all connected with restaurants:

plate/dish/course (of a meal)

service
خدْمَة tasty/delicious

to book/reserve

bill

waiter (from the French 'garçon')

hotel

Exercise 4 Now look at the advertisement for a restaurant and fill in the details:



اسم المطعم: ليالينا
اسم الفندق :
المدينة :
*رَقْم التليفون :
سعر العشاء :
سعر العشاء بالخدمة :
*عَدَد الأطباق :

Words for places

You may have noticed that many Arabic words for places begin with the letter mīm (م). For example:

'place of study' i.e. school

بَمُكْرَسَة

'place of writing' i.e. office or desk

'place of manufacture' i.e. factory

'place for works of art' i.e. museum

'place of sitting' i.e. council

These words are all *nouns of place*. The root letters connected with writing, studying, producing etc. are put into the pattern مَفْعَـل (or sometimes مَفْعَـل or مَفْعَـل) to mean the place where the activity happens.

^{*} Both these words mean 'number', but رَقْ is used for actual numerals (telephone numbers/house numbers etc.), whereas عَدَد is used when the meaning is 'quantity'.

Listen to the plurals for these words and repeat the pattern.

Exercise 5 DICTIONARY WORK

Using your existing knowledge and your dictionary, complete this table:

plural	noun of place (meaning)	<i>verb</i> (meaning)
مَلاَعب	مَلْعَب (playing field/pitch/court)	لعب/يلعَب (to play)
		عرض/يعرِض
	مَدْخَل	, ء
	مَطْعَم	خرج/يخرُج
		طبخ/يطبُخ
		غسيل/يغسِل
	مَسْجِد	*

Very occasionally a root will have two nouns of place with slightly different meanings:

يا جرسون! ! 17.3 WAITER! Look at the menu:

	, w ^c				
	طبق أوّل				
١٥ ريالا		البيض	سلطة طاطم بـ		
۳۰ ریالا		سلطة دجاج بالمايونيز			
	رئيسي	طبق			
٣٥ ريالا			سمك بالأرز		
۳۰ ریالا			لحم بالبطاطا		
٣٥ ريالا		طم والجبنة	مكرونة بالطها		
	یات	حلو			
١٥ ريالا			آيس كريم		
۱۸ ریالا			كعك باللوز		
مشروبات					
١.	عصير برتقال	٨	قهوة		
1 ٤	عصير تفاح	٨	شاي		
١.	كولا	١٠.	شاي بالحليب		

EListen to the tape and look at the picture:

- ـ يا جرسون! من فضلك!!
 - _ نعم ...!
- _ واحد سلطة طهاطم بالبيض ... وبعد ذلك سمك بالأرز .
 - ـ تحت أمرك ياسيّدي . والمشروب ؟
 - ـ آخذ عصير تفاح بارد من فضلك ...
 - ـ تحت أمرك . هل تجرّب حلوياتنا الشهية بعد ذلك ؟
 - _ نعم . آخذ بعد ذلك آيس كريم بطعم الفانيليا . (
 - _ تحت أمرك . عدت أمرك

Exercise 6

Here is the customer's bill. Look back at the menu and fill in the prices.

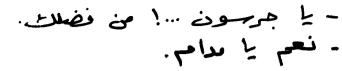
سلط- طماطم
سعك بلارز
ابست محريم
عصر ثغاج
المجموع
+ خدمة ١٠٪
المجموع بالخدمة

Exercise 7
Referring to the menu again, complete this

bill:

۲.	
14	لحم بالبطالما
	شاي بالحليب
	المجموع
	+ خدمة ۱۰٪
	المجموع بالخدمة

Now imagine that a female customer is ordering this meal and write out her conversation with the waiter. Begin like this:



17.4 IN THE KITCHEN في المُطْبَخ Listen to the tape and look at the pictures.



أحمد طَبَّاخ في مطعم . ماذا فعل اليوم ؟



The owner of the restaurant is now checking that Ahmed has done everything:



(Notice that these endings are the same as the possessive pronouns (see Chapter 8), except that $(\bar{\imath})$ changes to $(\bar{\imath})$ when added to a verb:

Exercise 8

Write three more questions that the owner could ask Ahmed and give his answers.

Exercise 9

Now complete this exercise as in the example. (Remember: plurals of objects are *feminine singular*.)

1 حضر الوزير المعرض .
$$\longrightarrow$$
 حضره الوزير . Υ استقبَلَت الرئيسة زعماء الأحزاب .

Forms of the verb

You have probably noticed that the verbs أخرج and جهّز ,سخّن نظّف are slightly different from the verbs you already know. This is because they are *forms* of the verb.

Sometimes in English you can find verbs which are derived from the same word, but with slightly different endings which change the meaning:

liquefy liquidate liquidise

Arabic takes this concept much further. The root letters of a verb are put into a number of patterns to give different, but connected, meanings. These patterns are called *forms*.

There are ten forms altogether, but the ninth is very rare. The simplest form of the verb is called *form 1*. This is the form you already know. For example:

The other forms fall into three groups: (i) II, III and IV

(ii) V and VI

(iii) VII, VIII and X

The verbs أخرج ,سخّن , نظّف and جهّر fall into the first group.

In the past tense (الماضي):

Form II of the verb is made by doubling the second root letter with a shadda ($\stackrel{\sim}{\Box}$):

فَعَلَ ← فَعَّلَ

Form III is made by adding a long 'a' after the first root letter:

Form IV is made by adding an alif and putting a sukūn over the first root letter:

In the present tense (الخارع), all three forms have a damma (عُ) as the first vowel and a kasra (ع) as the last. Forms II and III have a fatha (ع) in the middle, and form IV has a sukūn (as in the past tense):

	المضارع (present)	الماضي (past)
form II	يُفَعِّل	فَعَّل
form III	يُفَاعِل	فَاعَلَ
form IV	يُفْعِل	أَفْعَلَ

Forms II and IV often carry the meaning of carrying out an action on someone or something else (making the verb *transitive*):

Forms in the dictionary

If you look up a verb in Wehr's dictionary, you will find the forms referred to by Roman numerals:

sakuna u, sakana u and sakina a (عنونة sukūna, عنونة sakūna, عنه sakūna, عنه sukūna) to be or become hot or warm; to warm (up); to be feverish II to make hot, to heat, warm (a s.th.) IV == II

Notice that not all roots have all forms. Generally, most roots have some forms. In the entry for منخن above, you can see that forms II and IV exist (although IV is not common). None of the other ten forms is possible with this root.

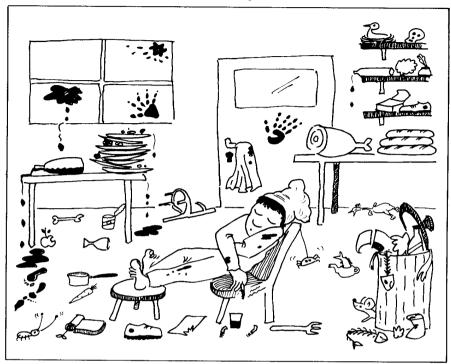
Exercise 10 DICTIONARY WORK

Using your dictionary, complete this table, as in the example:

المعني	المضارع	الماضي		
to heat	يُسَخِّن	سَخَّنَ	П	سخن
			Ш	سفر
			II	صلح
			IV	سلم
			П	رتب
			III	حدث
			II	درس

The next day the owner of the restaurant brings in a new cook to replace Ahmed while he is on holiday.

Look at the picture and listen to the tape:



لَمْ يغسل الأطباق ... لَمْ يغسلها . لم يُنَظِّف المائدة ... لم يُنَظِّفها . لم يطبخ اللحم ... لم يطبخه .

ہے + present verb =
$$past$$
 negative (Remember: \ddot{Y} + present verb = $present$ negative)

(It can be quite confusing that the past negative is made with the present verb, but it is, in fact, quite similar to the English:

Present: I mend.

I do not mend.

Past: I mended.
I did not mend.)

Exercise 11

this:

Write more sentences about the replacement cook, as in the example.

ع الكرسيّ المكسور .

Now write out the conversation when the owner rings up. Begin like

17.5 STRUCTURE NOTES

When أنتم, هم is put in front of the present verb for أنتم, هم and أنتم, هم they lose the nūn on the end:

(* An extra, unpronounced alif is written after the waw, as it is in the past tense.)

Modern Standard Arabic uses with a present verb to make the past tense negative. However, it is also possible to use with the past tense:

This is now archaic and is not usually used in written or formal Arabic. However, it has been retained universally by spoken dialects and so is worth mentioning.

Vocabulary in Chapter 17

بَقَّال	grocer
جُبنَه	cheese
حَلِيب	milk
بَيْض	eggs
زَيْت	oil
ځ. خ بز	bread
عَصِير	juice
أُرُزّ	rice
	sugar
مَكَرُونَة	macaroni/spaghetti
بَسْكَوِيت	biscuits
كَعْك	cake
مَسْحُوق إلغَسيِل	washing powder
	toothpaste
صَابُون	soap
	shampoo
كِيس (أَكْيَاس) أَنْبُوبَة (أَنَابِيب) قِطْعَة (قِطَع) طَبَق (أَطْبَاق)	bag
أَنْبُوبَة (أَنَابِيب)	tube
قِطْعَة (قِطَع)	piece
طَبَق (أَطْبَاق)	plate/dish/course
سَلَطَة	salad
آیس کَرِیم	ice-cream
كَخُمْ	meat

```
waiter
                                  service
                 delicious شَهِيّ
hotel فُنْدُق (فَنَادِق)
ضَبَاح /مَسَاء الخَيْر Good morning/evening (reply)
at your service
تَخْت أَمْرك
Please (take it, come in etc.)
                            at, 'chez'
                         (O) madam یا مَدَام
                       (O) sir يا سَيِّدِي
                          give me أُعْطِني
                    مع السلامة Goodbye ('with safety')
                    Goodbye ('God give you safety') - reply only
                    number/numeral رَقْم (أَرْقَام)
                    number/quantity عَدَد (أَعْدَاد)
                 to book حجز/یحجز to play
                  to show/exhibit
                     to cook طبخ/يطبُخ
                      to take أخذ/يأخُذ
```

to mend صلّح/یصلّح

to clean نظّف/ينظّف

سخّن/يسخّن to heat

> جهّز/يجهّز to prepare

أخرج/يُخرج to put out/expel/eject

playing field/pitch/court مَلْعَب (مَلاَعب)

مَدْخُل (مَدَاخِل) entrance

exit مَغْرَج (مَغَارِج)

(مَكْتَبَات) library/bookshop

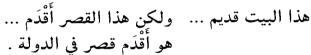
mosque مَسْجد (مَسَاجد)

laundry/launderette/sink

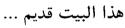
COMPARING THINGS

18.1 THE BIGGEST IN THE WORLD الأَكْبَر فِي الْعَالَم Look at the pictures and listen to the tape:









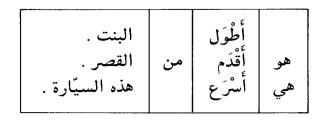


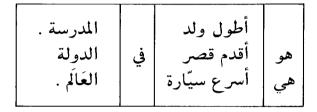
هذا الولد طويل ... ولكن هذه البنتِ أَطْوَل من الولد . هي أَطُول بنت في المدرسة.



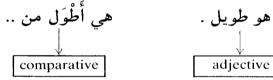


هذه السيّارة سَرِيعَة ... ولكن هذه السيّارة أَسْرَع ... هي أَسْرَع سيّارة في العالم.





Comparing things:



Comparative pattern: (Lei

Notice that:

- Comparatives *do not* usually change depending on whether they are describing something masculine, feminine or plural. The pattern remains the same:

– If the second and third root letters of an adjective are the same, they are written together with a shadda (\mathcal{L}) in the comparative:

– If the third root letter is a waw or ya', this changes to alif maq \bar{s} ura (see section 6.4 B) in the comparative:

Exercise 1

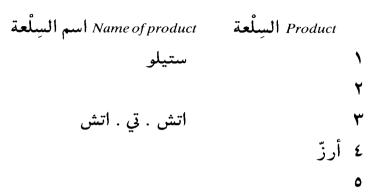
Make these adjectives into comparatives, as in the examples:

Now choose one of the comparatives to complete each sentence:

continent = قَارَّة *

Exercise 2

Look at the advertisements on the following page and complete this table:



Now circle all the comparatives you can find.

Look again at the advertisement for the pen and find this phrase:

The most suitable pen for Arabic script.

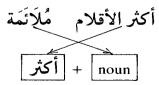
In English we use -er to make short adjectives into comparatives:

cheap \rightarrow cheaper fast \rightarrow faster

But for longer words we use more/most:

expensive \rightarrow *more* expensive suitable \rightarrow *more* suitable

Arabic is similar. The أُفْعَل pattern is only used for simple adjectives. For longer words, أُكْثَر (more/most) is used with a *noun*:



(literally: 'the most (of) pens (as to) suitability')



Making nouns from verbs

In English, we can make nouns from verbs by adding a number of different endings. Three of the most common of these endings are *-ment*, *-tion*, and *-ance*:

verb	noun
to develop	develop <i>ment</i>
to negotiate	negotiation
to accept	accept <i>ance</i>

Arabic makes nouns from verbs by putting the root letters into different patterns (in the same way that plurals and nouns of place are made).

With simple verbs (form 1), there are a number of different possible patterns and so you will have to use a dictionary to find out which pattern is used with a particular verb. Like English, however, there are some patterns that are more common than others. Here are four of the most common:

Nouns made from the other forms of the verb are much easier as there is almost always only one possible pattern. Look carefully at the pattern for forms II, III and IV and try and think of nouns you already know which fit these patterns:

erbal noun	verb	form
تَفْعِيل	فَعَّلَ/يُفَعِّل	П
مُفَاعَلة*	فَاعَلَ/يُفَاعِل	Ш
إِفْعَال	أَفْعَلَ/يُفْعِل	IV

^{*} or occasionally فِعال (as in دِفاع – defence)

You may have realised that you already know these nouns:

These words will help you to remember the patterns.

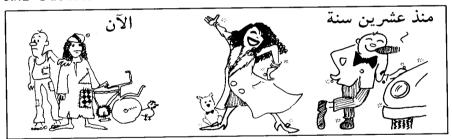
The nouns made from the forms of the verb are usually made plural using the sound feminine plural: تحقيق حست تحقيقات

Exercise 3

Complete this table, as in the example. You should be able to do this exercise *without* your dictionary.

meaning	noun	verb	form
to go out	خُرُوج	خرج/يخرُج	I
to talk/conduct a dialogue	تُدْرِيس	حادث/یحادث	
to taik/conduct a dialogue	زِراعة		
	ُدِفاع	س س مار س	Ш
	عَقْد	نظُف/ينظَف	
	ا خراج		

18.2 COMPARING PAST AND PRESENT



Fawzi and Fawzia have fallen on hard times. Look at the pictures of them now and twenty years ago and listen to the tape.

مُنْذُ عشرين سَنَة كان فوزيّ غَنِيًّا . كان أُغْنَى رجل في المدينة ... ولكنّه الآن فقير وضعيف .

ولكنّه الآن فقير وضعيف . في الماضي كانت زوجته فوزيّة مُمَثّلة في الأفلام السينهائيّة ... كان لها أكبر سيّارة في الشارع ... ولكنّها الآن فقيرة وليس لها سيّارة ، لها درّاجة مكسورة .

هو ≡ ولكنّهُ	ولكن 🛨
ه <i>ي</i> ≣ولكنّها	
أنا≣ولكنّي	
أنت ≣ولكنّك	
etc.	

عشرين سنة ثلاث ساعات دقيقتَيْن	مُنْذُ
period of t مُنذُ	ime

الآن الماضي هو غنيّ . → كان غنيًا . هي ممثّلة . → كانت ممثّلة . ها سيّارة → كان لها سيّارة . له بيت جميل → كان له بيت جميل .

Exercise 4

Complete the paragraph about Fawzi and Fawzia using the words in the box. (You can only use a word once.)

ولكنها دجاجة كان ذهبيّ ليس كانت بيت المدينة أبيض منذ عشرين سنة ____فوزي غنيًّا . كان له ____ جميل وكبير في وسط ____.. ولكنه الآن فقير و ____له بيت . في الماضي ____زوجته فوزية غنيّة وكان لها خاتم ____وكبير وكلب ____وصغير ... ___الآن فقيرة وليس لها كلب ، لها ____.



- (أنا) كُنْتُ
- (أنتَ) كُنْتَ
- (أنتِ) كُنتِ
- (هو) کَانَ
- (هي) كَانَتْ
- (نحن) كُنَّا
- (أنتم) كُنْتُمْ
- (هم) كَانُوا

and other hollow verbs

The verb \forall is used mainly in the past as most sentences do not need the verb 'to be' in the present. \forall is different from the other verbs you have met so far as it seems to have only two root letters. However, the root is actually \forall .

There is a group of verbs that have either waw or ya' as the middle root letter. These are called *hollow verbs* as the middle root letter often disappears. Some of the most common Arabic verbs are hollow and so it is worth explaining how they are different in more detail. Look back at the verb 3×10^{-5} . Notice that:

- the verbs for هم and هم have a long 'a' in the middle.
- the other parts of the verb that you know have a short vowel in the middle. This short vowel is damma (2) if the middle root letter is wāw; and kasra (2) if it is yā'.

The two columns below show how this works for كُانُ, where the middle root letter is wāw, and طُارُ (to fly), where the middle root letter is yā'.

طار	کان	
طِرْتُ	كُنْتُ	(أنا)
طِوْتَ	كُنْتَ	(أنتَ)
طِرْتِ	كُنْتِ	(أنتِ)
طَارَ	كَانَ	(هو)
طَارَتْ	كَانَتْ	(هي)
طِرْنَا	كُنَّا*	(نحن)
طِرْتُمْ	كُنْتُمْ	(أنتم)
طَارُوا	كَانُوا	(هم)
كُنْ + نَا = كَنَّا*		

Try covering the two columns and writing out the different parts of the verbs طار and طار and طار and طار and عان for yourself.

Hollow verbs are quite easy to recognise in the present tense as they have a long vowel in the middle. This is a long 'i' if the middle root letter is yā':

and usually a long 'u' if the middle root letter is waw:

This long vowel remains for almost all the parts of the verb:

Exercise 5

Fill in the gaps in the sentences, as in the example:

Now join your sentences using ولكن, e.g.:

منن عشربين سنة كنتُ غنيًّا ولكنّي الآن فعير.

to

Hollow verbs in the dictionary

If you just see the past of a hollow verb written like this: طركان or like this without vowels: طركان, you will not be able to tell if the middle root letter is wāw or yā'. You will have to look in the dictionary under both roots. When you find the correct root you will see an entry like this:

(طير) طار (طير) tāra i طار (طير) tayarān) to fly; to fly away, fly off, take to the wing; to hasten, hurry, rush, fly (الله to); to be in a state of commotion, be jubilant, exult, rejoice; طار ب to snatch away,

Sometimes there are two hollow verbs with different middle root letters. For example:

to say/speak قال / يقول to take a siesta

So make sure you check both possibilities and choose the one that fits the context.

Exercise 6 DICTIONARY WORK

Here are some more common hollow verbs. Complete the table using your dictionary, as in the example:

المعنى	المصدر	المضارع	الماضي
to fly	ط/ي/ر	يَطِير	۔ طَارَ (طِرْت)
	ز/و/ر		زار
			باع
		يعود	عاد
			قاد
increase			زاد
	ق/و/ل		قال

Exercise 7

Now read the article and

adjusting your guesses if

necessary.

complete the matching exercise,

Below you will find a newspaper article. Look firstly at the headline and decide if the article is about sport, politics or health.

Now before reading the article, look at the Arabic words and phrases below and see how many of them you can match to the English. You can get clues by looking at the root letters and by deciding which kind of words they are (verb, noun, singular, plural etc.). You should be able to guess about half of the meanings.

	8	at half of the meanings.
idea/thought —		زيَادَة
way/means		َ زیکارَة
talks/discussions		تَبَادُل
(a) visit		تَطَوُّ ر
exchanging/(an) exchange	/	َ جَوْلَة
the (European) Common M	1arket	سَبيل (سُبُل)
development		تَعَاوُن
to begin		بَدَأً/يَبْدَأُ (في)
investigation/exploration		مُعَادَ ثَات
cooperation		تَنَاوُل
round (of talks, visits)/tour		بَحْث
dealing with (a topic)		السُّوق الأورُوبيَّة المُشْتَرَكَة
(an) increase		فكْرَة (أَفْكَار)

التعاون بين الوزراء

منذ عشرين سنة بدأ وزراء دول السوق

الأوروبية المشتركة في تبادل الزيارات

والمحادثات لتناول تطورات السوق وبحث

سبل زيادة التعاون بينهم . بعد كلّ جولة محادثات يعودون إلى دولهم بأفكار

فُعُل Plural pattern

Notice the plural word سُبُل in the newspaper article. This is the plural of سبيل (way, means) and is a fairly common plural pattern. Other words you know which fit this pattern are:



Take care not to confuse this pattern with فُعُولُ , which has a long 'u' between the second and third root letters. Listen to the tape of the two patterns and repeat them.



There are a few other fairly common plural patterns and some more rare ones. These are listed in appendix (iii) with examples for reference.

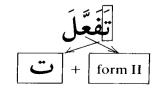
Forms V and VI

Look at these new words from the article in exercise 7:

These are all words which belong to the second group of forms of the verb: forms V and VI.

In the past, forms V and VI look like forms II and III with added on the front:

Form V:





In the *present tense* (as in the past), these two forms are vowelled with fathas:

Form V does not have any particular meanings attached to it, but form VI often has the meaning of doing something together, as a group. For example:

to help each other; to cooperate تُعَاوَنُ / يَتَعَاوَنُ ليَتَعَاوَنَ ليَتَعَاوَنَ ليَتَعَاوَنَ ليَتَبَادَل تَبَادَلَ ليَتَبَادَل ليَتَبَادَل

You can make nouns from forms V and VI by changing the last fatha in the past tense to a damma:

cooperation	تعَاوُن
(an) exchange	تَبَادُل
development	تَطَوُّر

Exercise 8

Fill in the missing parts of the table below:

form	noun	verb
VI	تَبَادُل	
	تَطَوُّر	
		تَنَاوَلَ /يَتَنَاوَل
	تَعَاوُ ن	

Exercise 9

Here is the newspaper article again, this time with eight words missing. Can you complete the article *without* looking at the original?

18.3 STRUCTURE NOTES

The comparative

Although the comparative does not usually change according to whether the subject is masculine or feminine, you will sometimes see the feminine form of the more common adjectives, especially گُرُى , the feminine form of

greater Cairo القاهرة الكبرى

In the phrase:

the noun ملائمة (suitability) is in the accusative case as the meaning is adverbial (as to suitability). This means you will sometimes see the extra alif (see section 12.6).

Hollow verbs

There are a few hollow verbs that act rather strangely. Although they have wāw as the middle root letter, they behave like hollow verbs with yā' in the past, and have a long 'a' in the present. A common verb like this is the verb نام/ينام (to sleep):

he is sleeping/sleeps ينام they are sleeping/sleep يَنَامُون etc.

Vocabulary in Chapter 18

the world العَالِم قَارَّة (قَارَّات) continent Africa أَفْريقِيَا Asia Europe the Common Market (EC) talks/discussions جَوْلة (جَوْلات) round (of talks etc.)/tour بَحْث (بُحوث) investigation/exploration زيارة (زيارات) (a) visit زیادة (زیادات) (an) increase سَبِيلِ (سُبُل) way/means فِكْرَة (أَفْكار) idea/thought مُمَثِّل (ممثّلون) actor مُمَثِّلة (ممثّلات) actress fast sweet/beautiful rich poor important

cheap a lot/many good (better/best) since year مُنْذُ عشرين سنة 20 years ago ('since 20 years') today ('the day') now ('the time') to begin طار/يطير to fly to be کان/یکون to say قال/يقول to visit زار/یزور to go back/return عاد /یعو د to drive/lead قاد / يقود to increase/go up to be suitable لائم/يُلائم to develop تطوّر/يتطوّر to cooperate تعاون/يتعاون to exchange (views etc.)

to deal with/concern

FUTURE PLANS		

أَشْهُر السنة MONTHS OF THE YEAR Listen to the tape:

ينَايِر ٧ يُولِيُو	1
فَبْرَايِر ٨ أَغُسْطُس	۲
مَارْس ۹ سَبْتَمْبِر	٣
إِبْرِيل ١٠ أُكْتُوبِر	٤
مَايُو ١١ نُوفَمْبرَ	٥
يُونيُو ١٢ ديسَمُّ	٦

Exercise 1

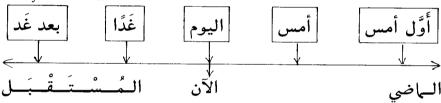
Write down the month after the one you hear on the tape. The first answer is an example.

Now write sentences as follows:

If you look at the top of an Arabic magazine or newspaper, you will probably see two dates. One is according to the Muslim calendar. The most famous month of this calendar is Ramadan, the month of fasting. This date will have the letter hā' (هـ) after it, which stands for هجرة (hijra) or 'flight', as the calendar starts with the Prophet Mohammad's flight from Mecca to Medina in 622 AD. The second date is according to the Christian calendar. This date is followed by a mīm (م), which stands for عيلاديّة or 'birth' (of Christ).

There are also alternative names for the months of the Christian calendar, which are used in some Arab countries. The more international names are used here, but the alternatives and the months of the Muslim calendar appear in appendix (iv) for reference.





Now look at the Minister for Health's diary for this week and listen to the tape:

فبراير ٢٤	فبراير ٢٣	فبراير ۲۲	فبراير ۲۱	فبراير ۲۰
10/1,	-۱۱۱ اجتماع مع يشيف الوزراء	۱۰٬۳۰ اجتحاع مع وزیر الاقتصاد	۴۲۰ مؤتمر للمرضات فخیے فندق ماربوت	101
<i>7</i> ⁷ 11	٤,٤٥ جلسة عل مع المساندسيه في وزارة الصخّة	٥،٠ زيارة المستشفو الجدمع	-۱۳ نامئر وزیر الصح	(Jugur
			<u> </u>	

اليوم

اليوم فبراير ٢٢ والآن الساعة الحادية عشرة صباحًا .

الآن يَحْضُر وزير الصحّة اجتماعًا مع وزير الاقتصاد وسَيزُور المستشفى الجديد الساعة الخامسة مساءً.

أمس ، فبراير ٢١ صباحًا ، حضر الوزير مؤتمرًا للممرّضات في فندق ماريوت وبعد ذلك استقبل نائب وزير الصحّة في مكتبه الساعة السادسة .

Notice that all Arabic words which consist of only one letter with a short vowel are written together with the next word:

Exercise 2

Look at the diary and fill in the gaps in this description of the minister's schedule tomorrow, February 23rd:

غَدًا ، ٢٣ فبراير صباحًا ، سَيَحْضُر الوزير ____مع ____الوزراء الساعة الحادية ____و ___ذلك ____جلسة عمل مع ____في وزارة ____الساعة ____الا ربعًا .

Now write about his schedule on the 20th and 24th.

Exercise 3

Below you will find an article about a tour conducted by Carlucci at the end of 1988.

Firstly, read the six questions below and give yourself 3 minutes to find the answers in the article.

- 1. What is Carlucci's first name?
- 2. What is his position in the American government?
- 3. How many countries will he visit on his tour?
- 4. When is he starting his tour?
- 5. Where is he setting out from?
- 6. Where is he going first?

كارلوتشي غدا في باريس ويزور الكويت ٦ ديسمبر

واشنطن_ي.ب_اعلن هنا امس ان فرانك كارلوتشي وزير الدفاع الاميركي سيغادر واشنطن غدا، الاثنين في جولة تشميل ٦ دول في اوروبا الغيربية والخليج.

وسيفادر كارلوتشي بروكسل الى الخليج يوم الجمعة ويزور عمان في الفترة من ٢ الى ٥ ديسمبر والبحرين ٥ ولا ديسمبر والسعودية يوم ٦ من الشهر ذاته ويزور الكويت في السادس والسابع من الشهر المذكور قبل ان يعود الى واشنطن.

to leave = غادَرَ/يُغادر the Gulf = الخَليج

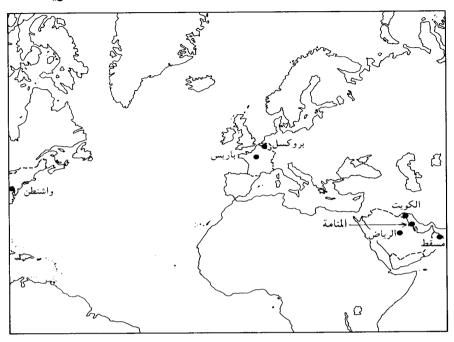
(Al Qabas 28/11/88)

Exercise 4

Match the cities to the countries:

البحرين	واشنطن
فرنسا	باریس
عُيان	بروكسل
أمريكا	الرياض
بلجيكا	المنامة
السعودية	مسقط

Now look at the article and plot Carlucci's route on the map. (Note that الكويت is the name of the country and the city.)



Exercise 5
Use your map and the article to fill in the missing information on the schedule:

يوم الاثنين ٢٨ نوفمبر: واشنطن إلى باريس يوم الخميس ١ ديسمبر: باريس إلى ____ يوم الخميس ١ ديسمبر: ___ إلى مسقط يوم الاثنين ٥ ____: مسقط إلى المنامة يوم الثلاثاء ____ : المنامة إلى ____ يوم الثلاثاء ____ إلى الكويت يوم ___ إلى الكويت يوم ___ : ___ إلى الكويت يوم ___ : ___ إلى الكويت

Exercise 6

Use the two tables below and the information in exercise 5 to make sentences about Carlucci's tour, as in the examples:

	الأثنين		واشنطن		واشنطن	
	الثلاثاء		باريس		باريس	
_ نوفمبر .	الأربعاء		بروكسل		برو کسل	
	الخميس	يوم	الكويت	إلى	الكويت	سَيُغَادِر
_ دیسمبر .	الجمعة		مسقط		مسقط	'
	السبت		البحرين		البحرين	
	الأحد		الرياض		الرياض	

				باريس	
_ نوفمبر .		_ نوفمبر	في الفَتْرَة من	بروكسل	
	إلى		(in the period	مسقط	سَيَزُور
_ دیسمبر .		ـ دیسمبر	from)	الكويت	
				البحرين	

سیغادر کارلوتشی واشنطن إلی باریس یوم الاشین ۲۸ نوخمبر، سیزور باریسی فی الفترة من ۲۸ نوخمبر الی ا دیسمبر.

19.3 AN ADVENTURE

To end on a light note, comic strips, although originally intended for children, can be a useful and fun way to improve your Arabic.

Look at the story on the opposite page.



أَن	لا بُدّ
that	It is necessary ('There is no escape')
	يَبْدُو
	It seems/appears

Exercise 7 Now look at the story and match the Arabic verbs to the English:

to take up (time)/to last اِسْتَغْرَقَ / يَسْتَغْرِق أقلع/يُقلع إِنْطَلَقَ/يَنْطَلِق to try/attempt to take care/watch out to take off (aeroplane) إِقْتَرَبَ/يَقْتَرب (من) to fall/drop down إِنْتَبَهَ/يَنْتَبه to move off/set out حاول/يحاول to approach/come close (to)

Forms of the verb: VII. VIII and X

If you look at the list of verbs above, you should find four which do not fit into the patterns you know for forms I to VI. These are:

> إنْطَلَقَ /يَنْطَلِق إِقْتَرَبَ/يَقْتَرب

These verbs belong to the last group of forms of the verb: VII, VIII and X. Notice that all the verbs above begin with an alif carrying a kasra in the past and have two fathas followed by a kasra in the present. This is the same for all verbs in this group.

Form VII You can recognise this form by the nun before the root letters. This form often has a passive meaning:

to be/become broken

إِنْكُسَرَ/يَنْكَسِر

to be thrust forward: to move off; to set out اِنْطَلَقَ / يَنْطَلق

Form VIII This form is common and you can recognise it by the ta' (ت) between the first and second root letters:

to come close (to); to approach

اِقْتَرَبَ/يَقْتَرِب (مِنْ) اِجْتَمَعَ/يَجْتَمِع

to meet; to gather together

EForm X You can recognise this form by the sīn (سر) and tā' (ت) together before the root letters, which produce a 'st' sound. You already know a form X verb:

to receive (guests etc.)

إِسْتُقْبَلَ/يَسْتَقْبِل

If you look back at the cartoon, you will find another:

to take up (time);

to last (a period of time)

اِسْتَغْرَقَ/يَسْتَغْرق

The nouns from these forms all have two kasras followed by a long 'a' and have a 'tum tee tum' sound to them:

moving off; setting out	إنْطِلاَق
(an) approach	ٳڨۨؾؚۯؘٵٮٜ
meeting	ِ جْتِ ِهَا ع
reception	ٳڛٛؾؚڡ۠ۛڹؘٵڶ

You can find a summary of all the forms of the verb in appendix (ii). This should be a useful reference when you want to look up a word in the dictionary or attempt a guess at the meaning by identifying the root letters.

Exercise 8

Listen to the tape. You will hear a verb (in the past). Pause the tape and say the noun which comes from this verb. Release the pause and check your answer with the tape. For example:

Repeat the exercise until you get all the nouns correct and then write down both the verb and the noun, as in the example above.

Exercise 9

Now comple	ete this table	:		
meaning	noun	verb	root	form
to set off	ٳڹ۠ڟؚڵؘٲق	إِنْطَلَقَ / يَنْطَلِق	ط/ل/ق	VII
		إِنْتَبَهَ/يَنْتَبِه		
to try		حَاوَلَ /يُحَاوِل		
		إِسْتَغْرَقَ/يَسْتَغْرِق	غ/ر/ق	
	ٳؚۊ۠ڵۘٳۼ			IV
			ق/ر/ب	VIII
	سُقُوط		س/ق/ط	I

19.4 STRUCTURE NOTES

It is possible to use the particle سُوْفُ (sawfa))instead of سُد (sa) for the future, although سُد is more common in modern Arabic:

Vocabulary in Chapter 19

n Chapter 19	
شَهْر (أَشْهُر)	month
يَنَايِر	January
فَبْرَايِر	February
مَارْس	March
ٳؚؠ۠ڔؚيل	April
مَايُو	May
يُونِيُو	June
يُولِيُو	July
أغُسْطُس	August
سُبْتُمْبِر	September
أكْتُوبِر	October
نوفمبر	November
ۮؚؠڛؘۘم۠ <u>ڔ</u>	December
المستقبل	the future
غدًا	tomorrow
بَعْدُ غد	the day after tomorrow
اوُل امْس	the day before yesterday
الخُليج رَيْنَ مِيَانِ	the Gulf
فَتْرَة (فَتَرَات)	period
	to try/attempt
_	to leave/depart
	to take off (aeroplane)
انطلق/ينطلق	
انتبه/ينتبه	to take care/watch out

to approach/come close to

to meet/gather

to take up (time) استغرق/یس

لا بُدّ أن It is necessary that...

... It seems/appears that...

REVISION AND HINTS

ON FURTHER STUDY

20.1 REVISION

Exercise 1

Fill in the missing words and then put the conversation in the correct order:

🗌 ونصف؟
🗌 صباح النور يا سيّدي أمرك .
تفضّل .
🗌 أعْطِنيفضلك كيس سكّر وعصير تفاح .
🗆 صباح المخير .
الله يسلّمك .
🗌 ثلاثة جنيهات من
🗆 تفضّلالسلامة .

Exercise 2

Look again at the menu in 17.3 and choose a meal for a vegetarian customer. Then write out the conversation between the waiter and the (male) customer.

Now complete the bill below for the menu you have chosen.

المجموع
+ خدمة ١٠٪
المجموع بالخدمة

Exercise 3

Opposite you can see the contents page from a weekly news magazine, showing where you can find the various articles (article = مُقَالَة).

Study the table below and then give yourself five minutes to find the information in the contents page.

اسم المجلّة :
تاريخ* العدد :
رقم العدد :
صفحة المقالة عن أمريكا:
كاتب المقالة عن العلاقات الايرانيّة الفرنسيّة :
صفحة مقالة عبدالكريم أبو النصر:
كاتب المقالة في صفحة ٥ :
موضوع* المقالة في صفحة ٤٦ :

Exercise 4 Now write a sentence for each article, as in the example:

ا كتب نبيل خوري المقالة في صفحة ٥٠



^{*} تاريخ means 'date' as well as 'history'. ** مَوْضُوع (مَوَاضِيع) = subject (matter)

Write the plural of these words as in the example:

۱ بَیْت
$$\rightarrow$$
 بُیُوت
 ۲ مکتب
 ۱ دُرْس

 ۲ بَحْر
 ۷ قِطار
 ۱۲ سَبیل

 ۳ وکیل
 ۸ مُمثّلة
 ۱۳ متحف

 3 کتاب
 ۹ مدینة
 ۱ طَبق

 0 وزیر
 ۱ مُساعد
 ۱ مُساعد

Exercise 6 Re-write these sentences, as in the example:

اعقد الوزير أمس جلسة عمل . (كلّ يوم ...)
 العرب بعض المرب جلة عمل .
 ذهبت زينب أمس إلى البنك . (كلّ يوم ...)
 أرْنا أولّ أمس المتحف في وسط المدينة . (غدًا ...)
 كل يوم ينظّفون الغُرف في الفندق . (أمس ...)
 هل ستتقابلون غدًا ؟ (... أوّل أمس ؟)
 تطوّرت دُول العالم الثالث في السنين الماضية . (الآن ...)
 ينطلق الأصدقاء الآن إلى المدينة . (منذ ثلاث ساعات ...)
 اجتمع وزراء الاقتصاد في عيّان الشهر الماضي وتبادلوا الأفكار .
 (اليوم ..)

Exercise 7

Look at the list of things Nadia has to do today. It is now the afternoon and she has ticked off what she has done so far.

Using the verbs in the box and looking at the list, make sentences about what Nadia has done today, as in the example.

Exercise 8

Now re-write your sentences in exercise 7 as below:

20.2 HINTS ON FURTHER STUDY

You have now come to the end of this book and I hope it has encouraged you to continue your study of Arabic. As I mentioned in the introduction, this course aims to give you a solid foundation in the Arabic script and Modern Standard Language, as used throughout the Arab World.

You are now in a position to decide which direction to go in and this obviously depends on your particular needs and interests. Your main options are:

- (i) to continue to study the Modern Standard language in more depth.
- (ii) to study a particular spoken dialect.
- (iii) to branch into the classical language.

The following notes are intended to help you decide how you would like to continue your studies and to tell you what material is available to you. You will probably want to concentrate on one of the above options but they are not mutually exclusive and you may like to sample them all.

(i) Modern Standard Arabic

If your main interest is in understanding Arabic in the form of newspapers, comics, books, signs, advertisements, correspondence, radio and TV news, conference proceedings, formal speeches etc., then you should continue to expand your knowledge of Modern Standard Arabic (MSA).

Course Books There are a number of course books for MSA which will take you beyond the scope of this book. Probably the most useful is the elementary level (3 volumes) of Modern Standard Arabic (Abboud et al, 1971) published by Cambridge University Press. This course has a lot of useful extracts and graded authentic material from newspapers and books with glossaries and exercises. The drawbacks, however, are that the course is not primarily designed for students working on their own, the explanations are often over-complicated and grammatical and the quality of production is poor. These factors make the books sometimes difficult to follow.

If you are interested in continuing to study MSA, you should also buy a reference book such as *Modern Literary Arabic* by David Cowen (CUP, 1958). This will be a useful back-up to the structure you have learnt in this course but this type of book tends to be very dry and lacks any kind of practice material except the translation of unconnected sentences.

Literature In 1988 Naguib Mahfouz, an Egyptian writer, won the Nobel prize for literature. This has created growing international interest in modern Arabic literature. Mahfouz himself has written many novels which can be found outside the Arab World in both the original Arabic and in translation. However, Mahfouz's style is quite difficult for a beginner and you would be better off by starting with graded extracts from literature (such as in the course mentioned) and then progressing to authors such as Taha Hussein, Mikha'il Nuaima or Jibran Khalil Jibran who use a simpler style.

Other material There is a wealth of other material for you to use to improve your knowledge of Modern Standard Arabic. Arabic newspapers, magazines and comics are widely available outside the Arab World. Comics are a good and entertaining way of improving your language as the pictures often give a clue as to the meaning.

If you go to a part of town where there are a lot of Arabic speakers, you can also look at the signs, posters, labels on imported food etc. A word of warning: other languages are also written in Arabic script (for example Farsi and Urdu) so do not panic if you come across material where all the words look totally unfamiliar and the script has some strange additions.

(ii) Spoken dialects

It is possible to speak Modern Standard and be understood. In fact, native speakers will sometimes conduct conversations in MSA if they are in a formal situation (a television debate, for example) or if they come from a variety of different countries and find it difficult to understand each other's dialect. You will also find that native speakers are not as aware as learners of the differences between spoken dialects and Modern Standard and will slip in and out of them quite easily. In informal talk and chat, however, you will find conversations difficult to follow if you cannot understand the dialect.

So, if your main interest is in talking to Arabic speakers in everyday situations, then you should acquire a knowledge of one of the spoken dialects. These vary from country to country but are all more or less similar to MSA, so your knowledge will be very useful. In this book, I have tried to point out where there are variations from MSA which are common to all spoken dialects but you will need either access to native speakers or a course book in your chosen dialect to gain fluency or, ideally, both.

There are many course books designed to teach you the dialect of a particular country or region. Try to choose one which has Arabic script as well as transliteration (English letters). Having mastered the script

and learnt your Arabic through it, you will find it extremely annoying to have to read transliteration which is useless outside a course book. Arabic, not surprisingly, makes far more sense in Arabic letters. If you are unsure about which dialect to learn, then it is best to opt for either Egyptian or Levant (Syria, Jordan etc.) as these are the most widely understood.

(iii) Classical Arabic

Classical Arabic, as used in the Qur'ān and other religious and classical literature, is structurally not that different from Modern Standard. It is the use of vocabulary and the style of the language which varies, just as Shakespearian English will vary from *The Times* newspaper.

There are specialist dictionaries and reference books for classical Arabic. There is not, however, anything that is 'user-friendly' and many of the publications are very old and difficult to follow. You may find it easier to continue to study Modern Standard and combine this with reading classical texts which have translations alongside the Arabic so that you acquire a feel for the style.

There only remains to wish you luck and to hope that this book has given you the foundation you need to master Arabic.

APPENDIX

Appendix (i) THE ARABIC SCRIPT

			յտո	icu io.	
name	of.	the letter		the letter	
lette		by itself	before	both sides	after
ألِف	alif	1	L	-	_
باء	bā'	ب	ب	•••	بـ
تاء	tā'	ت	ت		تـ
ثاء	thā'	ث	ـث		ثـ
جيم	jīm	ج	ج	جــ/يجــ	جـ
حاء	ḥā'	ح	ح	حــ/يحــ	حـ
خاء	khā'	خ	خ	خـ/يخـ	خـ
دال	dāl	٤	د	-	-
ذال	dhāl	ذ	ـ	-	-
راء	rā'	ر	ـر	-	-
زاي	zāy	ز	ـز	-	-
سين	sīn	س			
شين	shīn	ش	ش		شــ
صاد	ṣād	ص	ص		<u>صـ</u>

ioined to:

			joir	ned to:	
nam leti		the letter	1 0	the letter	
ieii	er	by itself	before	both sides	after
ضاد	ḍād	ض	ض	غـ	ضـ
طاء	ţā'	ط	ط	ط	ط
ظاء	ҳā'	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ
عين	aynع	ع	ع		عـ
غين	ghayn	غ	غ	غ	غـ
فاء	fā'	ف	ف	ف	ف
قاف	qāf	ق	ـق	قـ	قـ
کاف	kāf	ك	ك	کـ	کـ
لام	lām	J	ل	4	ل.
ميم	mĩm	م	٠٠٠٠		مــ
نون	nūn	ن	ـن	<u>:</u>	ن
هاء	hā'	٥	ـه	···/-	ھــ
واو	wāw	و	و	_	_
ياء	yā'	ي		··· ···	يي
همزة	hamza	۶	_	_	_

Appendix (ii) THE ARABIC VERB

Parts of the verb

These are the parts of the verb you have met in this book:

المضارع present	الماضي past	
أكتب	ک تبْتُ	(أنا)
تكتب	كتبْتَ	(أنتَ)
تكتبين	كتبْتِ	(أنتِ)
يكتب	كتب	(هو)
تكتب	كتبَتْ	(هي)

نكتب	كتبْنَا	(نحن)
تكتبُونَ	كتبْتُمْ	(أنتم)
يكتبُو نَ	كتبُوا	(هم)

The following parts also exist but are relatively uncommon and so have not been taught. They are included here for your reference:

المضارع present	past الماضي		
يكتبْنَ	كتبْنَ	هنّ	(they, feminine)
يكتبَان	كتبا	هما	(they, masc. dual)
تكتبًان	كتبَتَا	هما	(they, fem. dual)
تكتبْنَ	كتبْتُنَّ	أُنْتُنَّ	(you, fem. plural)
تكتبَان	كتبْتُهَا	أُنْتُهَا	(you, masc. & fem. dual)

Forms of the verb

This table is a summary of the forms of the verb. You have learnt the present, past and the nouns. Active and passive participles have also been included for your reference. (An active participle is the equivalent of -ing or -er in English, as in helping or helper, and a passive participle is the equivalent of -ed or -en as in helped or broken.)

The words in brackets are examples of the pattern, taken from words in the book.

passive participle مُفْعول	active participle فاعِل	<i>noun</i> varies	present يَفْعل	past فُعلَ	form I
(مكسور)	(خاتم)	-	(یکتب)	(كتب)	П
مُ فَعَّل	مُفَعِّل	تَفْعِيل	یُفَ عِّل	فَعَّل َ	
(مكعِّب)	(مدرّس)	(تدریس)	(يدرّس)	(درّس)	111
مُفَاعَل	مُفَاعِل	مُفَاعَلَ ة/فِعَال	يُفَاعِل	فَاعَلَ	
-	(محاسب)	(محادثة/دفاع)	(يحاول)	(حاول)	

مُفْعَل	مُفْعِل	إِفْعَال	يُفْعِل	أَفْعَلَ	IV
_ مُتَفَعِّل	(مسلِم)	(إسلام)	(يسلم)	(أسلم)	
مُتَفَعِّل	مُتَفَعِّل	تَفَعُّل	يَتَفَعَّل	تَفَعَّلَ	V
-	-	(تطوُّر)	(يتطوّر)	(تطوَّر)	
متفاعَل	مُتَفَاعِل	تَفَاعُل	يَتَفَاعَل	تَفَاعَلَ	VI
-	-	(تعاوُن)	(يتعاون)	(تعاوَن)	
مُنْفَعَل	مُنْفَعِل	إنْفِعَال	يَنْفَعِل	ٳڹ۠ڡؘؘعؘڶ	VII
-	-	(انطلاق)	(ينطلق)	(انطلق)	
مُفْتَعَل	مُفْتَعِل	إفْتِعَال	يَفْتَعِل	إفْتَعَلَ	VIII
(مؤتمر)	(معتدل)	(اجتماع)	(يجتمع)	(اجتمع)	
مُسْتَفْعَل	مُسْتَفْعِل	إِسْتِفْعَال	يَسْتَفْعِل	ٳڛ۠ؾؘڡ۠۫ۼۘٙڶ	X
(مستقبل)	(مستطيل)	(استقبال)	(يستقبل)	(استقبل)	

Appendix (iii) MONTHS OF THE YEAR

The following are the alternative names for the Christian months of the year, as used mainly in the Eastern Arab World:

كَانُون الثَّانِي	يناير
شُبَاط	فبراير
أُذَار	مارس
نِیسَان	إبريل
أَيَّار	مايو
جَزِيرَان	يونيو
تُمُّوز	يوليو
آب	أغسطس
أَيْلُول	سبتمبر

اكتوبر	تِشْرين الأوَّل
نوفمبر	تِشْرَين الثَّانِي
ديسمبر	كانون الأوَّل

The following are the months of the Muslim calendar:

المُحَرَّم	
صَفَر	
رَبيع الأوَّل	
رَبيع الثَانِي	
جُمَادَى الأُولَى	
جُمَادَى الآخِرَة	
رَ جَب	
شَعْبَان	
رَمَضَان	(the month of fasting)
شُوَّال	
ذُو القَعْدَة	
ذُو الحجّة	(the month of pilgrimage

Appendix (iv) PLURAL PATTERNS

These are the plural patterns you have met in this book, with examples:

example	pattern	
مدرّسون	ون	(sound masculine)
مدرسّات	ات	(sound feminine)
أقلام	أَفْعال	
بيوت	فُعول	
رجال	فِعال	
دُّوَل	فُعَل	

وزراء	فُعَلاء
كُتُب	فُعُل
أشهر	أَفْعُل
مكاتب	فَعَالِلَ

Here are some more, less common, plural patterns for your reference:

example	patteri
مفاتیح (مفتاح pl. of)	نعَالِيل
مِهَن (مهنة pl. of)	فِعَل
رسائل (رسالة pl. of)	فَعَائِل
شوارع (شارع pl. of)	فَوَاعِل
قمصان (قمیص pl. of)	فُعْلان

ANSWERS

TO EXERCISES

Chapter 1

Exercise 1

See the table of printed and handwritten letters in section 1.1.

Exercise 2

Exercise 3



4 نبت	1 تين
5 يبنى	2 ني
6 بيتي	3 تبن

Exercise 6

Exercise 7

(tunn)
$$\ddot{\ddot{z}}$$
 3 (batt) $\ddot{\ddot{z}}$ 1 (nayy) $\ddot{\ddot{z}}$ 4 (bayyin) $\dot{\ddot{z}}$ 2

Exercise 8

Chapter 2

Exercise 1

See the table in section 2.1

Exercise 2

(bard)
$$= (d) + (r) + (ba) + 1$$

(ward)
$$\hat{g} = (d) + (r) + (wa) = 2$$

(rabw)
$$= (w) + (b) + (ra) = 3$$

(badhr)
$$\dot{j} = (r) + (dh) \dot{j} + (ba) \dot{j} = 4$$

(birr)
$$= (r) + (r) + (bi) = 5$$

(burr)
$$= (r) + (r) + (bu) + 6$$

(thawb)
$$\dot{\hat{z}} = (b) + (w) + (tha) \hat{z}$$
 7

(daraz)
$$\dot{\epsilon} = (z) + (ra) \dot{\epsilon} + (da) \dot{\epsilon} 8$$

Exercise 3

6 بَرِيد 7 بَيْنَ	َ وَزِير
7 بَيْنَ	۽ دِين
8 بَيِّن	َ دَيْن
9 زَيْن	، بَیْت
10 وَارد	؛ يُريد

Exercise 4

Exercise 5

1	zayn	4	zaynab
2	dīnā	5	nādir
3	zayd	6	badr

A4 B3 C1 D3

Exercise 6

2 أنا زين وأنتِ ؟ أنا دينا . 3 أنا بدر وأنتَ ؟ أنا زيد .

Chapter 3

Exercise 1

٥	6	1 ح
٥	7	2 خ
خ	8	3 ح
ح	9	s 4
٥	10	5 خ

Exercise 2

1g	('aḥmad)	5a	(midḥat)
2d	(najjār)	6h	('ukht)
3f	(baḥḥār)	7b	('akh)
4c	(mawi)	8e	(naiāh)

Exercise 3

5 بحر	کت	1
6 محمد	بهم	2
7 هامد	جمد	3
8 نخن	مش	4

Exercise 4

1	feminine	5	feminine
2	feminine	6	feminine
3	masculine	7	masculine
4	feminine	8	masculine

Exercise 5

هَذه خَيْمة .	4	هذا حِمار .	1
هذه زُجاجة .	5	هذه دَجاجة .	
هذه بنت .	6	هذا نَهْر .	3

Exercise 6

daughter	بِنْت	mother	أُمّ
father	أَب	husband	زَوْج
son	اِبْن	brother	أخ
wife	زَوْجة	sister	أخنت

Exercise 7

مدحت هو ابن أحمد .	1
وردة هي أخت مدحت	
أحمد هو زوج جيهان .	3
وردة هي بنت جيهان .	4
جيهان ه <i>ي</i> أمّ وردة .	5
جيهان هي أمّ مدحت.	6

Exercise 8

There are many possibilities for sentences from this family tree. Use

exercise 7 as a guide.

Note: take care of i and i . When they are put in sentences like these they have a long 'u' at the end:

Chapter 4

Exercise 1

9 س	5 ص	1 س
10 ص	。 6	2 ض
11ح	7 ض	3 ح
12 س	8 د	4 د

Exercise 2

1b 2c 3a 4e 5d

headline 1: Bush

headline 2: Mitterrand

headline 3: Thatcher

Exercise 3

هي ممرّضة .
 هي ممرّضة .
 هو مهاسب .
 هما نجّاران .
 هما خيّازان .
 هما مهندسان .

Exercise 4

masculine plural	feminine plural
خبّازون	خبّازات
محاسبون	محاسبات
ممرّضون	ممرّضات
مهندسون	مهندسات
نجّار و ن	نجّار ات

Exercise 5

Exercise 6

نحن ممرّضاتً .
 نحن معندسُونَ .
 نحن مهندسُونَ .
 نحن معاسبَان .
 نحن خاسبَان .

Chapter 5

Exercise 1

1 same 5 different 2 same 6 different 3 different 7 same 4 same 8 different

Exercise 2



تعكس عمق علاقات الشعبين الشقيقين

The subject of the headline is President Mubarak (of Egypt): مُبَارَك

1 هذا قمیص .

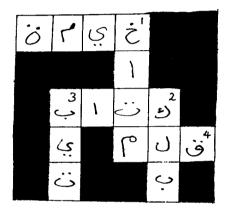
2 هذا مفتاح . 6 هذا كلب .

هذا قلم . 7 هذه درّاجة .

4 هذه حقيبة . 8 هذه سيّارة .

9 هذا خاتم .

Exercise 4



Exercise 5

مكسور/سليم جميل/قبيح ثقيل/خفيف أبيض/أسود جديد/قديم

Exercise 6

1 هذا القميص أبيض .
 4 وهذه البنت قبيحة .

2 وهذا القميص أسود . 5 هذه السيّارة جديدة .

3 هذه البنت جميلة . 6 وهذه السيّارة قديمة .

Exercise 7

_ هذا قلمك .

ـ شكرًا .

هذا قلم الولد وقلمه جديد وأبيض .

وهذه حقيبة المدرّسة وهي قديمة .

Exercise 8

(Yours may vary slightly.)

هذا مفتاح محمّد وهو أسود .

هذه درّاجة محمّد وهي مكسورة وقديمة .

هذا قميص محمّد وهو أبيض . قميصه قديم .

هذا كلب محمّد وهو أسود . كلبه جميل وخفيف .

هذا قلم محمّد وهو أبيض. قلمه جديد.

هذا مفتاح جيهان وهو أبيض .

هذه سيّارة جيهان . سيّارتها جديدة وجميلة .

هذه حقيبة جيهان وهي ثقيلة .

هذا خاتم جيهان وهو جميل .

Chapter 6

Exercise 1

ص 5 ط 1

2 *ت* 6 س

ض 7 ظ 3

4 **5** 8 **5**

Exercise 2

 $_1$ $\sqrt{}_3$ \times 5 $\sqrt{}$ 7 \times

2	×	4	$\sqrt{}$	6	×	8 1	/
Exer	cise 3	3					

See appendix (i)

Exercise 4

A4 B2 C5 D3 E1

Exercise 5

Exercise 6

word	initial letter	sun letter
البنت	ب	×
التبن	ت	$\sqrt{}$
الثوب	ث	$\sqrt{}$
النهر	ن	$\sqrt{}$
الياسمين	ي	×
الدجاجة	۵	$\sqrt{}$
الذباب	ذ	$\sqrt{}$
الراديو	ر	$\sqrt{}$
الزجاجة	ڗ	$\sqrt{}$
الولد	و	×
الفيلم	ف	×
القميص	ق	×

الكتاب	ك	×
الليمون	ل	
الطين	ط	
الظاهر	ظ	
العرب	ع	×
الغ ب	ė	×

Exercise 7

- ld هذا كرسيّ.
- 2c هذه خزانة .
- 3f هذه مائدة .
- 4h هذا باب .
- 5b هذا شبّاك .
- 6g هذا تليفزيون.
 - 7a هذا سرير.
 - 8e هذه صورة .

- 1 هل هذه خزانة ؟
- لا ، هي مائدة .
- 2 هل هذا كتاب ؟
 - لا ، هو قلم .
- 3 هل هذا مفتاح ؟لا ، هو خاتم .
- 4 هل هذا كلب ؟
- نعم ، هو كلب .

5 هل هذه درّاجة ؟
 لا ، هي سيّارة .
 6 هل هذا شبّاك ؟
 نعم ، هو شبّاك .

Exercise 9

- 1 الزجاجة تحت المائدة.
- 2 الجريدة على الكرسيّ.
- 3 الحاربين الخيمة والسيّارة .
 - 4 الصورة بجانب الشبّاك .
 - 5 الكلب في الحقيبة.
- 6 الصورة فوق التليفزيون.

Exercise 10 (Yours may vary slightly.)

- 1 نعم ، هو بجانب المائدة .
- 2 التليفزيون على المائدة .
- 3 المائدة بين الخزانة والكرسي .
 - 4 نعم، هي بجانب الشبّاك.
 - 5 الخزانة بجانب الباب.
 - 6 لا، هو على المائدة.
 - 7 السرير تحت الشبّاك.
 - 8 لا ، هو بجانب الخزانة .
 - 9 هي على الخزانة.
- 10 نعم ، هي بين الكرسيّ والخزانة .

Chapter 7

Exercise 1

1c 2a 3d 4b

- 1 بدر محاسب وهو في البنك .
- 2 زينب ممرّضة وهي في المستشفى .
 - 3 زين مدرسة وهي في المدرسة .
 - 4 أحمد مهندس وهو في المصنع .

Exercise 2

1 true 2 true 3 false 4 true 5 false 6 false 7 true 8 false 9 true 10 false

Exercise 3

- 1 هناك تليفزيون على المائدة ولكن ليس هناك زجاجة.
 - 2 هناك سيّارة في الشارع ولكن ليس هناك درّاجة .
 - 3 هناك ولد بجانب الكرسيّ ولكن ليس هناك بنت .
 - 4 هناك كلب تحت الشجرة ولكن ليس هناك حمار .

Exercise 4

تينة ذبابة وردة لوزة حمامة بطّيخة

- 1 هناك سيّارة جديدة أمام المصنع .
 - 2 هناك قلم مكسور على المائدة .
- 3 أنا في سيّارتي الجديدة الجميلة.
- 4 ليس هناك شجر بجانب المستشفى .
 - 5 هناك مدرّس جديد في المدرسة .
 - 6 أحمد محاسب في البنك الجديد .

4 ه <i>ي</i> قويّة.	1 ه <i>ي</i> کبيرة .	
5 هو ضعيف.	2 هو طويل .	į
6 هي قصيرة .	3 هي صغيرة .	•

Exercise 8

Your picture should have the following:

- a street
- a hospital in the middle of the picture with a tall nurse standing by the door
- a new white factory on the right of the hospital with big beautiful trees in front of it
- a black ugly dog under the trees and some pigeons above it
- a small school to the left of the hospital with an old bicycle next to the gate/door

Chapter 8

Exercise 1

4 بَمْنقَط	1 مِعْر	
5 كنبنان	2 غُمُ ان	
6 بَيْرُوت	3 دِکَثق	
7 كغداد	Ź	

Exercise 2

word with ال		sun letter	first letter	word
(al bayt)	ٱلْبَيْت	no	ب	بیت
(an nahr)	اَلنَّهْر	yes	ن	نهو
(al khayma)	اَ لْخَيْمَة	no	خ	خيمة
(adh dhubāb)	اَلذُّ بَاب	yes	خ	ذباب
(az zujāja)	اَلزُّجَاجَة	yes	ز	زجاجة

(al warda)	ٱلْوَرْدَة	no	و	وردة
(al maṣnaع)	ألْـمَصْنَع	no	م	مصنع
(al kitāb)	ٱلْكِتَاب	no	<u>5</u>	كتاب
(as sayyāra)	اَلسَّيَّارَة	yes	س	سيّارة
(ad darrāja)	ٱلدَّرَاجَة	yes	٥	درّاجة
(al qamīs)	اَلْقَمِيص	no	ق	قميص
(al ḥaqība)	ٱلْحَقِيبَة	no	ح	حقيبة
(ash shubbāk)	اَلشُّبَّاك	yes	ش	شبّاك
(aṣ ṣūra)	اَلصُّورَة	yes	ص	صورة

Exercise 3

male زَیْد/أَنْوَر/حُسَیْن/أَحْمَد/فَهْد/مُحَمَّد/مِدْحَت/بَدْر female جِیهَان/دِینَا/زَیْنَب both زَیْن/نُور

Exercise 4

father: حسين

mother: جيهان

أحمد :son

elder daughter: زينب

younger daughter: دينا

ق	1	ف	و	ن
1	ث	ظ	1	ي
م	ص	ش	5	ح
(1	3	زن	س
اض ا	ذ	ض	٥	ق
رق	9	ت	اس	ش
ي	١	ن	4	ر
و	ر	ب	٥	ن
ب	اس	1	ح	•
1	J	انا	ج	و
ا خ	ط	ت	م	ش

masc. sing.	مدرّس	مهندس	نجّار
masc. dual	مدرّسَان	مهندسًان	نجّارَان
masc. plural	مدرّسُون	مهندسون	نجّارُون
fem. sing.	مدرّسة	مهندسة	نجّارة
fem. dual	مدرّستًان	مهندستان	نجّارتَان
fem. plural	مدرّسَات	مهندسات	نجّارَات

masc. sing.	خبّاز	ممرض	محاسب
masc. dual	خبّازَان	ممرّضَان	محاسبان
masc. plural	خبّازُون	ممرّضُون	محاسبُون
fem. sing.		ممرّضة	•
fem. dual	.	ممرضتان	
fem. plural	خبّازات	ممرّضَات	محاسبات

Exercise 6

مصنع	5	جريدة	
ذباب	6	هل	2
كتاب	7	زينب	3
باب	8	هناك	4

Exercise 7

7 هذا تليفزيون .	1 هذه سيّارة .
8 هذا شباك .	2 هذا مفتاح .
9 هذه حقيبة .	3 هذا كتاب .
10 هذا كرسيّ .	🍳 هذه درّاجة .
11 هذا كلب .	: هذا سرير .
12 هذا قلم .	هذا باب .

Exercise 8

The answer to this depends on where you put the objects. Try to find a native speaker to check it for you.

There is not one correct answer to this. Below is one suggestion.

هذه صورة بيت جميل وبجانب البيت هناك شجرتان: على يمين البيت شجرة كبيرة وعلى اليسار شجرة صغيرة. والبيت الجميل أبيض ولكن باب البيت أسود. أمام البيت هناك سيّارة جديدة وسليمة وهناك دجاجة صغيرة تحت السيّارة.

على يسار السيّارة هناك درّاجة مكسورة والدرّاجة المكسورة أمام الشجرة الكبيرة . على يمين الصورة هناك حمار جميل وبين الحار الجميل والسيّارة الجديدة هناك كلب قبيح وثقيل .

Exercise 10

- ١ هل الحمار قبيح ؟ لا ، هو جميل .
- 2 هل السيّارة أمام البيت ؟ نعم ، هي أمام البيت .
 - 3 هل الكلب جميل ؟ لا ، هو قبيح .
 - 4 هل الدرّاجة مكسورة ؟ نعم ، هي مكسورة .
- 5 هل الدجاجة على السيّارة ؟ لا ، هي تحت السيّارة .
 - 6 هل باب البيت أبيض ؟ لا ، هو أسود .
- 7 هل الشجرة الصغيرة على يسار البيت ؟ لا ، هي على يمين البيت .
- 8 هل الكلب بين الحار والسيّارة ؟ نعم ، هو بين الحار والسيّارة .

Exercise 11

- 1 هذه مدرستنا.
- هذه مدرسة دينا وزينب وبدر . هذه مدرستهم .
 - 2 هذا قلمي .
 - هذا قلم دينا . هذا قلمها .
 - 3 هذا ستنا .
 - هذا بت دينا ونادر . هذا بيتها .

4 هذه درّاجتي .

5 هذه ستّارتنا .

- هذه درّاجة زين . هذه درّاجتها .
- هذه سيّارة بدر وزيد ونادر . هذه سيّارتهم .

Chapter 9

Exercise 1

ب	ث	P	$\overline{\bigcap}$	٥	ر	ض	ن	ف	ت
1	ق	ا ص	j	ظ	و	س	C	ش	ز
٥	ز	(ر	اس	ر	ض	ص	ي	ي	ن
ق	1	ر	ع	J		ز	ب	ذ	ت
ش	ب	خ	ا و ا	1	ادنا	م	ري	J	
س	ح	ن	3	ر	1	J		ب	ح
غ	ع	١	ي	ث	ت	ح	ال	ان	ف
ي	و	غ	لق	ي	ر	و	w)	1	ن
ف	ت	ث	م	٥	ض	ش	و	إن ا	ز
1	ط	ص	ظ	ح	ز	ت	د	ذ	ز
س	ع	ن	ب	1	خ	ن		م	٤
ق	ش	ث	ذ	ز	غ	ج	ن	م	ر

Exercise 2

3 نعم، هي في السعودية.

1 لا ، هي في مصر .

4 هي في الأردنّ .

2 لا ، هي في العراق .

```
    5 نعم ، هي بين السعودية وسورية .
    6 هي في عُهان .
    7 نعم ، هي بجانب اليمن .
    8 لا ، هي بجانب سورية .
```

- القاهرة في مصر وهي عاصمة مصر .
- 2 الخرطوم في السودان وهي عاصمة السودان.
 - 3 طرابلس في ليبيا وهي عاصمة ليبيا .
 - 4 عبّان في الأردنّ وهي عاصمة الأردن .
 - 5 بيروت في لبنان وهي عاصمة لبنان .
 - 6 دمشق في سورية وهي عاصمة سورية .
 - 7 بغداد في العراق وهي عاصمة العراق.
- 8 الرياض في السعودية وهي عاصمة السعودية .
 - 9 مسقط في عُمان وهي عاصمة عُمان .
 - 10 صنعاء في اليمن وهي عاصمة اليمن.

Exercise 4

- 1 أسوان في جنوب مصر .
 - سيوة في غرب مصر .
- 3 الإسكندرية في شهال مصر.
 - 4 بورسعيد في شرق مصر.

Exercise 5

1c 2a 3f 4e 5g 6h 7i 8b 9d

Exercise 6

country	nationality
الأردن	أردنيّ
العراق	عراقي

اليابان	يابانيّ
أمريكا	أمريكتي
أسبانيا	أسبانيّ
روسيا	ر وسيّ
الصين	صينيّ
عُمان	عُمانيّ
إيطاليا	إيطاليّ
سورية	سوريّ
لبنان	لبنانيّ
، مصر	مصريّ
ليبيا	ليبيّ
فرنسا	فرنسي
ألمانيا	ألمانيّ
انجلترا	إنجليزي

- 1 القذافي من ليبيا . هو ليبي .
- 2 جورباتشوف من روسيا . هو روسي .
 - 3 ديانا من إنجلترا . هي إنجليزيّة .
 - 4 بوش من أمريكا . هو أمريكتي .
 - 5 حسين من الأردنّ . هو أردنيّ .
 - 6 فهد من السعودية . هو سعودي .
 - 7 ميتيران من فرنسا . هو فرنسي .
 - 8 جاكسون من أمريكا. هو أمريكي.

1 هو من أين ؟ هو من أمريكا . هو أمريكي .

2 هي من أين ؟ هي من اليابان . هي يابانيّة .

3 هما من أين ؟ هما من السعودية . هما سعوديّان .

4 هم من أين ؟ هم من روسيا . هم روس .

5 هنّ من أين ؟ هنّ من أسبانيا . هنّ أسبانيّات .

Exercise 9

1 السودان وليبيا 4 إيران ولبنان

2 مصر والسعودية 5 سورية وليبيا

3 مصر وأسبانيا
 6 السعودية والأردن المعردية والمعردية والمعردية والمعردية والأردن المعردية والمعردية وال

7 مصر والسودان

Exercise 10

الاسم: أحمد حسين

الجنسية: سعودي

المهنة: مهندس

اسم الزوجة: دينا حسين

حنسبة الزوجة: مصرية

مهنة الزوجة: مدرّسة

Example description (yours may vary):

محمّد نور محاسب في دمشق . محمّد سوريّ ولكن زوجته زينب بمنيّة . زينب مُرّضة في دمشق .

Chapter 10 Exercise 1

See section 10.1.

Exercise 2

6 kilo

1 film 2 telephone

7 democracy 8 parliament

3 tomatoes4 potatoes5 cigarette

8 parliamen 9 medal

10 million

Exercise 3

ا أربعة جنيهات ع ستّ ميداليات ا خسة تليفونات ٥ عشر ممرّضات ا ثلاثة نحّادين

Exercise 4

۲ کویت ـ فلس
 ۲ السعودیة ـ ریال
 ۳ قطر ـ ریال
 ۶ دبی ـ درهم

Exercise 5

بكم كيلو البرتقال ، من فضلك ؟
 كيلو البرتقال بأربعة جنيهات .
 بكم كيلو التفاح ، من فضلك ؟
 كيلو التفاح بثهانية جنيهات .

adj. (fem.)	adj. (masc.)	noun
ذ هبيّة	ذ هبيّ	ذَهَب
فضّيّة	ڣۣڞۜۑۜ	فِضّة
برونزيّة	برونزي <u>ّ</u>	بَرُونْز
خشبيّة	خشبي	خَشَب

adj. (fem.)	adj. (masc.)	noun
قطنيّة	قطني	قُطْن
مطاطية	 مطاطي	مَطَاط
زجاجيّة	زجاجيّ	زُجَاج
حريريّة	حريري	حَرير

(Your description may vary slightly.)

لجيهان كلب قبيح وثقيل وهو أبيض. لها سيّارة جديدة وجميلة وخاتم ذهبيّ وجميل ولكن حقيبتها قديمة وثقيلة. لجيهان مفتاح أبيض.

Exercise 8

- ١ لفنلندا أربع ميداليات ذهبيّة .
- ٢ للسويد ثلاث ميداليات ذهبيّة .
- ٣ للاتِّحاد السوفياتيّ تسع ميداليات فضّيّة .
 - ٤ لا، ليس لفرنسا ميداليات فضّية .
 - ٥ لسويسرا أربع ميداليات برونزية .
- ٦ لا ، للولايات المتحدة ميداليتان ذهبيّتان .
 - ٧ لا ، ليس هناك دولة عربية في القائمة .
- ٨ لا ، هي بين الولايات المتحدة وفرنسا في القائمة .

Exercise 9

- ١ كم مدرسًا في المدرسة ؟
 هناك ثلاثة مدرسين في المدرسة .
- ٢ كم ميدالية على المائدة ؟هناك سبع ميداليات على المائدة .

٣ كم ممرّضة في المستشفى ؟
 هناك خمس ممرّضات في المستشفى .
 ٤ كم ولدًا فوق الشجرة .
 هناك أربعة أولاد فوق الشجرة .

Chapter 11

Exercise 1

Root letters ح/س/ب	word محاسب
ك/ب/ر	كبير
ن /ج /ر	نجّار
ف/ت/ح	مفتاح
خ/ت/م	خاتم
د/ر/ج	درّاجة
ص/ن/ع	مصنع
م/ر/ض	ممرّضة
د /ر /س	مدرسة مدرّس }
	ح/س/بُ ك/ب/ر ن/ج/ر ف/ت/ح خ/ت/م د/ر/ج ص/ن/ع م/ر/ض

/بُيُوت /بَيْت	pattern 2
/أَقْلاَم /قَلَم	pattern 1
/بُنُوك /بَنْك	pattern 2
/أَفْلَام/فِيلْم	pattern 1
/أُوْلَاد /وَلَد	pattern 1

plural	singular
أُلْوَان	لَوْن
أَشْكَال	شَكْل
أُصْحَاب	صَاحِب
أُسْوَاق	سُوق
أُوْقَات	وَ قْت
سُيُوف	سَيْف
قُلُوب	قَلْب
مُلُوك	مَلِك
جُيُوش	جَيْش
شُيُوخ	شَيْخ

۱ هذه قلوب . هي قلوب .

۲ هذه بیوت . هی بیوت .

٣ هٰؤُلَاء أولاد . هم أولاد .

٤ هذا سوق . هو سوق .

ه هذه أشكال . هي أشكال .

٦ هٰؤلاء شيوخ . هم شيوخ .

Exercise 5

Exercise 4

plural	singular
مثلّثات	مثلّث
مربعات	مربع
مستطيلات	مستطيل
كرات	كرة
مكعّبات	مكعّب

Exercise 6

999	1
0 0 0	۲
$\triangle \triangle \triangle \triangle \triangle$	٣
	٤
	٥
	٦
	٧
	٨

Exercise 7

١ هناك كرة فوق المربّع .

٢ هناك كرة تحت المثلّث ./هناك مثلّث فوق الكرة .

٣ هناك مثلَّث في المربّع .

٤ هناك هرم بجانب المستطيل.

٥ هناك مستطيل بجانب المثلّث.

٦ هناك كرة بين المكعّب والهرم .

٧ هناك أربعة مربّعات فوق المستطيل .

Exercise 8

meaning	feminine	masculine
green	خَضْرَاء	اخضر ۂہ ۔
blue	زَرْقَاء	ازرق ۂ۰ُ
red	خَمْرَاء	احمر أ° أ
yellow	صَفَرَاء	اصفر

Exercises 9, 10 and 11

Your answers depend on how you have coloured the shapes. Try to check your sentences with a native speaker.

Chapter 12

Exercise 1

لصّ thief

investigation تحقیق

أمس

سرقة theft/robbery

with مع

1 Amman (Jordan)2 A million dollars

3 Yesterday

4 The Kuwaiti Bank

5 Two

Exercise 2

١ هل كتبت خطابات في مكتبك ؟
 نعم ، كتبت خطابات في مكتبي .
 ٢ هل ذهبت إلى مطعم أمريكيّ ؟
 لا ، ذهبت إلى مطعم عربيّ .
 ٣ هل أكلت سمكًا في المطعم ؟

٣٪ هل أكلت سمكًا في المطعم؟ نعم ، أكلتُ سمكًا .

٤ هل رجعت إلى البيت (بيتك) مساءً ؟
 نعم ، رجعت إلى البيت (بيتي) مساءً .

هل سمعت عن السرقة في الراديو ؟
 لا ، سمعت عن السرقة في التليفزيون .

Exercise 3

أنا زينب شوقي وبيتي في وسط مدينة عبّان . أمس .. ذهبتُ إلى البنك صباحًا ...

وشربتُ فنجان شاي . فتحتُ الخزانة .. وجلستُ على مكتبي . ذهبتُ إلى مطعم صينيّ ... وفي المطعم سمعتُ عن السرقة في الراديو . رجعتُ من المطعم إلى البنك . وحدتُ الشبّاك المكسد . .

Exercise 4

۱ ماذا شربتَ ؟ 0 ماذا فعلتَ في مكتبك ؟ ۱ أين شربتَ القهوة ؟ ٦ ما اسمك ؟

١ هل ذهبتَ إلى مطعم عربيّ ؟ ٧ متى سمعتَ عن السرقة ؟

ماذا أكلتَ في المطعم ؟

Exercise 5

اسمها زينب شوقي وبيتها في وسط مدينة عبّان .

أمس ذهبت إلى البنك الكويتيّ صباحًا . أوّلاً شربَت فنجان شاي وفتحت الخزانة . ثمّ جلسَت على مكتبها . بعد ذلك ذهبَت إلى المطعم وسمعَت عن السرقة في الراديو ... فرجعَت إلى البنك . أخيرًا وجدَت الشبّاك المكسور .

Exercise 6

سَمِعْتِ	٥	خَرَجْتُ	١
فَهَبْتُ/جَلَسْتُ	٦	ۮؘۿؘڹۘٮۛ۠	۲
ئىربىت شربت		أكَلْتَ	٣
عرب ت هَمَا تَ		كَتَبَ	٤

Exercise 7

٢ أنه الله على السيّارات في جنوب المدينة .

0 ذهب إلى مدرسة كبيرة في وسط المدينة .

٣ شرب فنجان شاي مع المهندسين .

١ خرج من القَصْر الملكيّ .

√ رجع إلى القَصْر الملكيّ .

٦ جلس مع الأولاد .

ك سمع من المهندسين عن السيّارة الجديدة .

Exercise 8

المعنى meaning	المصدر root	الكلمة word
minister	وزر	وزير
ambassador	سفر	سفير
ministry	وزر	وزارة
show/exhibition	عرض	معرض
message/letter	رسل	رسالة
relation/bond	علق	علاقة

Exercise 9

أكلت سمكًا في المطعم أمس صباعًا . دينا شربت زجاجة كولا . وجدت ولدًا صغيرًا بجانب باب المدرسة . أوّلًا زينب فتحت خزانة البنك الكويتيّ . جلست على كرسيّ خشبيّ . أخيرًا رجعتُ إلى بيتي مساءً .

Chapter 13

Exercise 1

pattern	plural	singular	
فعال	جِبال	جَبَل	mountain
فعال	جمال	جَمَل	camel

فُعَل	لُعَب	لُعْبة	toy
فعال	بحار	بَحْر	sea
فُعل	تُحَف	تُحفة	masterpiece/artefact
فُعل	دُوَل	دَوْلة	state/nation
فِعال	رِياح	رِيح	wind

Exercise 2

١ كم كلبًا في الصورة ؟هناك أربعة كلاب .

٢ كم جملًا في الصورة ؟
 هناك خمسة جمال .

٣ كم لعبة في الصورة ؟هناك تسع لعب .

كم جبلًا في الصورة ؟
 هناك ستّة جبال .

٥ كم رجلًا في الصورة ؟
 هناك سبعة رجال .

٦ كم علبة في الصورة ؟هناك ثهاني علب .

Exercise 3
See sections 10.1 and 13.2.

94	٥	٤٦	1
Y Y	٦	٨١	۲
۱۸٥	, V	40	٣
۱۵۷	٨	145	٤

١ ما هي درجة الحرارة ؟

درجة الحرارة ١٥ . الطقس بارد .

٢ ما هي درجة الحرارة ؟

درحة الحرارة ٤٠ . الطقس حار .

٣ ما هي درجة الحرارة ؟

درحة الحرارة ٣٠ . الطقس حار .

٤ ما هي درجة الحرارة ؟

درجة الحرارة عشرة . الطقس بارد .

ه ما هي درجة الحرارة ؟

درجة الحرارة ٥٠ . الطقس حار جدًا .

٦ ما هي درجة الحرارة ؟

درحة الحرارة ٢٥ . الطقس معتدل .

Exercise 6

١ درجة الحرارة الصغرى في بيروت ١٨.

٢ درجة الحرارة الكبرى في أثينا ٢٩.

٣ الطقس غائم وبارد في دبلن .

٤ الطقس صحو ومعتدل في طوكيو.

٥ لا، الطقس صحوفي مدريد.

٦ لا، الطقس معتدل في القاهرة .

٧ نعم، درجة الحرارة الكبرى ٣١.

٨ لا، درجة الحرارة الصغرى ٢٠.

٩ هناك ٤٠ مدينة في القائمة .

١٠ الطقس صحو في ٢٥ مدينة .

Exercise 7

There is more than one possible answer for some of the gaps. Below is

عزيزي أحمد

كيف حالكَ ؟ نحن في باريس والطقس حارّ وصحو ولكن الريح شديدة . ذهبنا أمس صباحًا إلى متحف كبير بجانب النهر وبعد ذلك أكلنا في مطعم فرنسي في وسط المدينة. بعد الأكل ذهبتُ إلى البنك ولكن محمّد وجيهان وعاطف رجعوا إلى المتحف

ماذا فعلتَ أمس ؟ هل كتبتَ لي خطابًا ؟

مع تحيّاتي ... نو ر

Exercise 8

Check with a native speaker.

Exercise 9

جملاً	١٨	رجلا	71
صورة	٤٩	سيفًا	24
خطابات	٥	هرمًا	٧٢
مفتاحًا	44	زجاجة	17
خىمة	94	كلبًا	٥٨

Chapter 14

Exercise 1

See section 14.1.

Exercise 2

يوم الجمعة قبل يوم السبت .

يوم الخميس بعد يوم الأربعاء .

يوم الأحد قبل يوم الاثنىن .

يوم الثلاثاء قبل يوم الأربعاء . يوم السبت بعد يوم الجمعة .

173	•	-
-t-xe	rcise	.1

algebra	الجَبْر	vizier (minister)	وَزير
emir (prince)	أمِير	tamarind	َ عَرِ هنديّ عَمْر هنديّ
saffron	زَعْفَرَان	alcohol	الكُحُول
alkali	القلْ		• •

Exercise 4 and 5			
plural (fem.)	plural (masc.)	singular (fem.)	singular (masc.)
سفيرات	سُفَراء	سَفيرة	سَفير
رَئيسات	رُّ ؤَساء	رَئيسة	۔ رَئیس
زَعيہات	زُعَهاء	زَعيمة	زَعيم
و َ کیلا ت	وُكَلاء	وَ كيلة	و کیل
Exercise 6			
meaning	فِعالة	root letters	
ministry	وِزارة	و/ز/ر	
embassy	سِفارة	س/ف/ر	
emirate	إمارة	ء/م/ر	
agency	وكالة	و/ك/ل	
leadership	زِعامة	ز/ع/م	
presidency/ chairmanship	رِئاسة	ر /ء/س	

Exercise 7

ماذا فعل الرئيس يوم الاثنين ؟ حضر افتتاح المصنع الجديد صباحًا وعقد اجتماعًا مع السفيرة الايطالية ظهرًا.

ماذا فعل الرئيس يوم الثلاثاء ؟

استقبل الأمير محمود في مكتبه صباحًا وبعد ذلك عقد جلسة مع زعماء الأحزاب ظهرًا.

ماذا فعل الرئيس يوم الأربعاء ويوم الخميس ؟

استقبل الأمير حسين في القصر يوم الأربعاء صباحًا وحضر (عقد) اجتماعًا مع سفراء السودان واليمن والبحرين ظهرًا .

عقد جلسة عمل مع الوزراء يوم الخميس صباحًا وبعد ذلك حضر افتتاح المتحف الملكي.

استقبل مبارك وزير الدفاع الرومانيّ .

Exercise 8

استقبل الأمير عبدالله سفير مالطا. كتب وزير العدل رسالة إلى الرئيس العراقي .

استقبل الأسد نائب وزير الخارجية الإيراني .

كتب الرئيس الألماني رسالة إلى علي صالح.

استقبل الأمير نايف وزير داخلية عدن .

استقبل الأمير سلمان وزير الثقافة الألماني .

كتب فالدهايم رسالة إلى أمير الكويت.

plural	meaning	root letters	word
مفتشون	inspector	ف/ت/ش	مُفَتَش
	general	ع/م/م	عامّ
مساعدون	aide/helper	س/ع/د	مُساعِد
شؤون	affair/matter	ش /ء/ن	شَأن
	military	ع/س/ك/ر	عَسْكَر ي ّ
	مفتّشون — مساعدون	inspector مفتّشون وnspector general aide/helper affair/matter	ف/ت/ش inspector مفتّشون ع/م/م general مساعدون س/ع/د aide/helper مساعدون ش/ء/ن affair/matter

o V 11 7 V Y V v V ٣× ۸× ٤×

Exercise 10

٥ أَكَلَ/شَرِبُوا ١ خَرَجَ/ذَهَبُوا ٣ ذَهَبَ/سَمِعُوا ٧ ذَهَبَت/وَجَدَت حَلَست/كَتَبَت

Exercise 11

adjective idāfa only نائب وزير الخارجيّة الايرانيّة سفير مالطا وزير داخليّة عدن الرئيس العراقيّ أمير الكويت الرئيس الألمانيّ وزير الثقافة الألماني وزير الدفاع الروماني

> سفير مالطا ← السفير المالطي وزير داخلية عدن -> وزير الداخلية العدني " أمير الكويت ←الأمير الكويتي

الرئيس العراقيّ ← رئيس العراق الرئيس الألمانيّ ← رئيس ألمانيا وزير الدفاع الرومانيّ ← وزير دفاع رومانيا

Chapter 15

Exercise 1

٣.	ثلاثين	11	احد عشر	,	واحد
٤٠	أربعين	14	اثنا عشر	۲	اثنان
٥٠	خمسين	١٣	ثلاثة عشر	٣	ثلاثة
٦.	ستين	16	أربعة عشر	٤	أربعة
٧٠	 سبع√ن	١٥	خمسة عشر	٥	خمسة
۸۰	. يـ ثيانين	١٦	ستّة عشر	٦	ستّة
٩.	تسعين	۱۷	سبعة عشر	٧	سبعة
90	خمسة وتسعين	١٨	ثمانية عشر	٨	ثهانية
٤٣	ثلاثة وأربعين	19	تسعة عشر	٩	تسعة
25	أربعة وثلاثين	۲.	عشرين	١.	عشرة

Exercise 2

Exercise 3

(Add the two previous numbers together.)

- 1 To Sudan 2 113
- 3 2291

- 4 Saudi Arabia
- 5 Belgium
- 6 Ashsharq Al-Awsat

۱) ۱۹ دولة ۲) لا

٣) لا ، هي بين السعودية والكويت .

٤) ٥١ طائرة

ه) ه طائرات

٦) نعم

۷) طائرتان

٨) لا، لها ١٣ طائرة

٩) نعم (الولايات المتحدة)

7(1.

Exercise 5

فُعَلاء فُعَل فعال فُعول زعياء علب جبال سيوف وكلاء تحف جمال قلو ب سفراء صور ر جال شيوخ رؤساء لعب بحار شؤ و ن لصوص بنوك ملو ك

- ون - ات أَفْعال

مساعدون سيّارات أهرام

مفتّشون تليفونات أولاد
أميرات أفلام

كرات أسواق

جنيهات أحزاب

درّاجات

١ هناك ثلاثة كلاب في الصورة .
 ٢ هناك أربعة جمال في الصورة .
 ٣ هناك خمس سيّارات في الصورة .
 ٤ هناك ستّ صور في الصورة .

هناك سبع درّاجات في الصورة .
 هناك ستّة رجال في الصورة .
 هناك ثلاث علب في الصورة .
 هناك ثماني لعب في الصورة .

Exercise 7 price of magazine	currency	country
۱۲ ریالاً	ريال	السعودية
۱٫۲۵ ریال	ريا ل	عُيان
۱۰ ریالات	ريال	اليمن الشهالي
۱٦٠٠ مليم	مليم	اليمن الديمقراطي
۱۰۰ ل ل	ليرة لبنانية	لبنان
۱۵ درهمًا	درهم	الامارات
۲,۵۰ دینار	دينار	ليبيا
۱۲۵۰ فلسًا	فلس	العراق
۱۲۵۰ فلسًا	فلس	الكويت
۱٫۸۵ جنیه	جنيه	السودان
- •		

327

Exercise 8

هذا الكرسيّ خشبيّ . هذا الخاتم ذهبيّ . هذا الشبّاك زجاجيّ . هذا القميص قطنيّ . هذه الميدالية برونزيّة .

Exercise 9

Exercise 9		
meaning	feminine	masculine
green	خَضْراء	أخضر
blue	زَرْقاء	ٲؙڗ۠ۯؘق
white	بَيْضاء	أُبْيَض
black	سَوْداء	أُسْوَد
yellow	صَفْراء	أَصْفَر
red	ح ُمراء	أُحْمَر

(The answers to the first two sentences depend on the colour of your front door and car.)

٣ البحر الأحمر في شرق مصر .
 ٤ وجدتُ طهاطم حمراء في السوق .
 ٥ هذا الكتاب أسود وأحمر وأصفر .

Exercise 10

ذهب/وصلوا/خرج/ذهبوا/وجدوا/ ذهبوا/أكل/أكل/ذهب/جلسَت/ كتبَت/رجع

Exercise 11

لخميس	-1	الأربعاء	الثلاثاء	الاثنين	الأحد
ير الاقتصاد مرافق في دارة.	الع	معرفی البنوك الاسلامیة	مؤتمر وزراء الامتصاد العرب		افتّاح البنك البنك البابيّ المجديد
		الأُمير أُحِمد في ا لمضّر الملك ي			جلی عمل عالم العام العام

There are many possible questions. Try to check yours with a native speaker.

Chapter 16

Exercise 1

١ كم الساعة ؟
 الساعة الخامسة
 ١ كم الساعة ؟
 ٢ كم الساعة ؟
 الساعة الثانية
 ٥ كم الساعة الحادية عشرة

Exercise 2

الساعة العاشرة والثلث .
 الساعة الثامنة والربع .

٤ الساعة الثانية والنصف.

٤ الساعة العاشرة الآثلثًا.

٥ الساعة السادسة الله عشر دقائق.

٦ الساعة الحادية عشرة الله خس دقائق.

Exercise 3

١ هي الساعة الحادية عشرة إلا خمس دقائق.

٢ نعم ، هناك أخبار الساعة الخامسة وخمس دقائق .

٣ هي الساعة التاسعة والنصف.

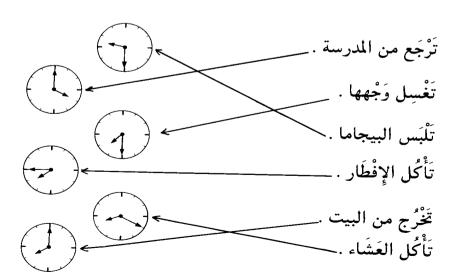
٤ هناك أربعة أفلام في هذا اليوم .

٥ نعم ، هناك فيلم الساعة الحادية عشرة وخمس دقائق .

٦ نعم ، هناك رياضة الساعة التاسعة والنصف .

٧ هو الساعة الثامنة.

Exercise 4



Your paragraph should read something like this:

كلّ يوم تغسل فاطمة وجهها الساعة السابعة والنصف وبعد ذلك تأكل الإفطار الساعة الثامنة الآربعًا. تخرج من البيت الساعة الثامنة وتذهب إلى المدرسة. ترجع من المدرسة الساعة الرابعة ثمّ تكتب دروسها قبل العشاء. بعد العشاء تشرب فنجان شاي وتلبس البيجاما الساعة التاسعة والنصف.

Exercise 5

١ لا تذهب فاطمة إلى المدرسة بالحمار ، تذهب بالدرّاجة .

٢ لا يشرب محمود فنجان شاي ، يشرب زجاجة كولا .

٣ لا يذهب محمود إلى المدرسة الساعة السابعة والنصف ، يـذهب الساعـة الثامنة .

٤ لا تغسل فاطمة وجهها الساعة الواحدة والثلث ، تغسل وجهها الساعة الساعة والنصف .

Exercise 6

Check your paragraph with a native speaker.

Exercise 7

١ ماذا تدرسون يوم الثلاثاء ظهرًا ؟

ندرس الموسيقي من الساعة الواحدة والنصف حتى الساعة الثالثة.

٢ ماذا تدرسون يوم الثلاثاء صباحًا ؟

ندرس الرياضيّات من الساعة الثامنة والنصف حتى الساعة العاشرة وبعد ذلك ندرس الانجليزيّة حتى الساعة الثانية عشرة .

٣ ماذا تدرسون يوم الاثنين ظهرًا ؟

ندرس الرسم من الساعة الواحدة والنصف حتى الساعة الثالثة.

٤ ماذا تدرسون يوم الخميس صباحًا ؟

ندرس الكيمياء من الساعة الثامنة والنصف حتى الساعة العاشرة وبعد ذلك ندرس الرياضيّات حتى الساعة الثانية عشرة.

كلّ يوم يخرج الأولاد من بيوتهم الساعة الشامنة إلّا ربعًا ويذهبون إلى المدرسة بالأوتوبيس المدرسي . يدرسون حتى الساعة الثانية عشرة وبعد ذلك يأكلون الغداء. بعد الغداء يدرسون من الساعة الواحدة والنصف حتى الساعة الثالثة ثم يرجعون من المدرسة إلى بيوتهم .

Chapter 17

Exercise 1

biscuits shampoo شامبو أرزّ

rice كعك

سگر sugar

مكرونة macaroni/spaghetti

Exercise 2

cake

كيس قطعة أنبوبة أرزّ كعك معجون الطهاطم طياطم عصر برتقال شاي كولا مسحوق الغسيل عصير تفاح مكرونة قهوة (حلب) (معجون الطماطم)

Exercise 3

_ مساء الخبر .

_ مساء النوريا مدام ... تحت أمرك .

- ـ اعطني من فضلك زجاجة زيت ...
 - ـ لتر ؟
 - لا ، نصف لتر من فضلك .
 - ـ تفضّلي .
- وعلبة مكرونة كبيرة وكيسين أرزّ.
 - **ـ** تفضّلی یا مدام .
- شكرًا ... كم الحساب من فضلك ؟
 - _ عشرة جنيهات.
 - ـ تفضّا .
 - ـ شكرًا ... مع السلامة يا مدام .
 - ـ الله سيلمك

Exercise 4

اسم المطعم: ليالينا اسم الفندق: ماريوت المدىنة: حدّة رقم التليفون: ٦٧١٤٠٠٠ سعر العشاء : ٨٠ , بالاً سعر العشاء بالخدمة: ٨٨ , بالاً

عدد الأطباق: أربعة

Exercise 5

verb noun of place plural لعب/يلعًب مَلْعَب مُلاعب (to play) (playing field/pitch) عرض/يعرض مَعْرَض معارض (to show/display) (show/exhibition)

مَداخِل	مَدْخَل	دخل/يدخُل
	(entrance)	(to enter)
مَخارِج	مَغْرَج	خرج/يخرُج
	(exit)	(to go out)
مطاعِم	مَطْعَم	طعِم/يطعَم
	(restaurant)	(to taste/relish)
مطابخ	مَطْبَخ	طبخ/يطبُخ
	(kitchen)	(to cook)
مَغاسِل	مُغْسَلَة	غسل/يغسِل
	(launderette)	(to wash)
مَساجِد	مَسْجِد	سجد/يسجُد
	(mosque)	(to bow in worship)

10	سلطة طماطم
40	سعات بلارز
10	ابست محرميم
15	عصر تغاج
٧٩	المجموع
٨	+ خدمة ١٠٪
٨٧	المجموع بالخدمة

Exercise 7

٧٠	سلطة دجاج
٧.	كحم بالبطا لما
1/	كعل باللوز
١.	شاي بالحليب
^^	المجموع
A	+ خدمة ١٠٪
av	المجموع بالخدمة

(Example conversation)

- يا جرسون ... ! من فضلك .
 - ـ نعم يا مدام .
- ـ واحد سلطة دجاج بالمايونيز ... وبعد ذلك لحم بالبطاطا .
 - ـ تحت أمرك يا مدام . والمشروب ؟
 - آخذ شاي بالحليب من فضلك .
 - ـ تحت أمرك . هل تجرّبين حلوياتنا الشهية بعد ذلك ؟
 - ـ نعم . آخذ بعد ذلك كعك باللوز .
 - ـ تحت أمرك .

Exercise 8

١ هل سخنت الخبز ؟ نعم ، سخنته .
 ٢ هل أخرجت الزبالة ؟ نعم ، أخرجتُها .

٣ هل جهّزتَ السلطة ؟ نعمُ ، جهّزتُها .

٢ حضره الوزير .
 ٢ استقبلتهم الرئيسة .
 ٣ استقبلها الأمير .
 ٧ شربتُه .
 ٤ وجدته فاطمة .
 ٨ كلّ يوم نطبخه مساءً .

Exercise 10

المعني	المضارع	الماضي
to heat	يُسَخِّن	سَجَّنَ
to travel	يُسافِر	سافَرَ
to mend/fix	يُصَلِّح	صَلَّحَ
to embrace Islam	يُسْلِم	أُسْلَمَ
to tidy/arrange	يُرَتِّب	رَتَّبَ
to talk/discuss	يُحادِث	حادَثَ
to teach	یُدَرِّس	ۮۘڒۘڛۘ

Exercise 11

١ لم يُخرج الزبالة ... لم يُخرجها .
 ٢ لم يُنظّف الشبّاك ... لم يُنظّفه .
 ٣ لم يُسخّن الخبز .. لم يُسخّنه .
 ٤ لم يُصلّح الكرسيّ المكسور .. لم يُصلّحه .

Chapter 18

Exercise 1

١٣ أَغْنَى	٩ أَسْرَع	٥ أَصْغَر	١ أُطْوَل
١٤ أَفْقَر	١٠ أَرْخَص	٦ أَقْدَم	۲ أُكْبَر
١٥ أُهَمّ	١١ أَكْثَر	٧ أُجَدّ	٣ أُجْمَل
	١٢ أَفْضَل	٨ أُشَدّ	٤ أَقْبَح

النيل أَطْوَل نهر في العالم .
 كارل لويس أسرع رجل في العالم .
 القاهرة أكبر مدينة في افريقيا .
 أسيا أكبر قارة في العالم .
 الفضّة أرخص من الذهب .
 اللوزة أصغر من البطيخة .

Exercise 2

name of product اسم السلعة	product السلعة
ستيلو	قلم
نورث وست	طائرة
اتش . تي . اتش (HTH)	مطبخ
أنكل بنز	أرزّ
کونیکا	فيلم

Comparatives in advertisements: pen advertisement: اُكثر (ملائمة)

aeroplane advertisement: أفضل film advertisement: kitchen advertisement: مُفضل rice advertisement:

meaning	noun	verb	form
to go out	خُروج	خرج/يخرُج	I
to teach	تُدْريس	درّس/يدرّس	11
to talk/conduct a dialogue	مُحادَثة	حادث/یحادث	Ш
to cultivate	زراعة	زرَع/يزرَع	I
to defend	دِفاع	دافع/يدافع	Ш

to clean	: 10.5		
to hold/convene	تنظيف	نظّف/ينظّف	H
	عَقْد	عقد/يعقد	I
to put out(side)	إخراج	أخرج/يُخرج	IV
	_ · ·	(•) "" (•)	

كان/بيت/المدينة/ليس/كانت/ذهبيّ/أبيض/ولكنها/دجاجة

Exercise 5

۱ کنت ۲ کان ۳ کانوا ٤ کانت ٥ کنت ٦ کنّا

١ منذ عشرين سنة كنتُ غنيًّا ولكنّي الآن فقير .

٢ منذ ثلاثين سنة كان أحمد في الجيش ولكنَّه الآن محاسب في بنك .

٣ منذ نصف ساعة كانوا في المدرسة ولكنّهم الآن في بيوتهم .

ع منذ أربعين سنة كانت الرياض مدينة صغيرة ولكنّها الآن أكبر مدينة في

٥ في الماضي كنت مدرّسًا ولكنّك الآن مفتّش في وزارة التعليم .
 ٦ منذ دقيقتين كنّا في البنك ولكنّا الآن عند البقّال .

Exercise 6

المعنى	المصدر	المضارع	الماضي
to fly	ط/ي/ر	يَطير	۔ طار (طِرت)
to visit	ز/و/ر	يَزور	زار (زُرت)
to sell	ب/ي/ع	يَبيع	باع (بعت)
to return	ع/و/د	يَعود	عاد (عُدت)
to lead/drive	ق/و/د	يَقود	قاد (قُدت)
to increase	ز <i>/ي</i> /د	يَزيد	زاد (زدت)
to say/speak	ق/و/ل	يَقول	قال (ُقُلت)

Exercise 7

idea/thought	فِكْرة (أفكار)
way/means	سَبيل (سُبُل)
talks/discussions	محادثات
(a) visit	زِ يارة
exchanging/(an) exchange	تبادُل
the Common Market	السوق الأوروبية المشتركة
development	تطوَّر
to begin	بدأ/يبدأ (في)
investigation/exploration	بَحْث
cooperation	تعاوُن
round (of talks, visits)/tour	جَوْلة
dealing with (a topic)	تناوُل
(an) increase	زِيادة

Exercise 8

form	noun	verb
VI	تَبَادُٰل	تَبَادَلَ /يَتَبَادَل
V	تَطَوُّر	تَطَوَّ رَ/يَتَطَوَّر
VI	تَنَاوُل	تَنَاوَلَ /يَتَنَاوَل
VI	تَعَاوُن	تَعَاوَنَ/يَتَعَاوَنَ

Exercise 9

Refer to the article in section 18.3.

Chapter 19

Exercise 1

۷ أكتو بر ۱ مارس ۸ اپریل ۲ مایو ٤ أغسطس ۲ یونیو

١ مارس بعد فراير وقبل إبريل .

٢ ـ نيو بعد مايو وقبل يوليو.

٣ سيتمبر بعد أغسطس وقبل أكتوبر.

٤ أغسطس بعد يوليو وقبل سبتمبر.

٥ بناير بعد ديسمبر وقبل فبراير.

٦ مايو بعد إبريل وقبل يونيو.

٧ أكتور بعد سيتمير وقبل نوفمير.

۸ ابریل بعد مارس وقبل مایو.

Exercise 2

غدًا ، ٢٣ فبراير صباحًا ، سيحضر الوزير اجتماعًا مع رئيس الوزراء الساعة الحادية عشرة وبعد ذلك سيعقد جلسة عمل مع المساعدين في وزارة الصحّة الساعة الخامسة إلا ربعًا.

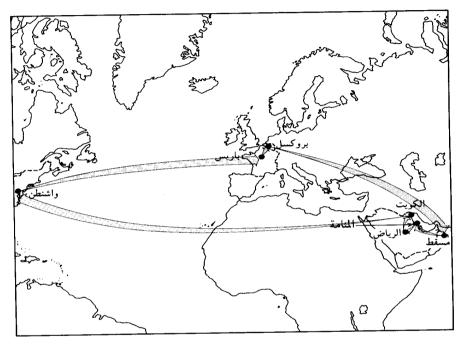
أوّل أمس ، ٢٠ فراير ، زار الوزير الكويت . بعد غد ، ٢٤ فبراير ، سيزور الوزير الأردن .

Exercise 3

- 1 Frank
- 2 Minister of Defence
- 3 Six
- 4 Tomorrow (Monday)
- 5 Washington
- 6 Paris

Exercise 4

واشنطن/أمريكا الرياض/السعودية باریس/فرنسا مسقط/عُيان بروكسل/بلجيكا المنامة/البحرين



Exercise 5

يوم الاثنين ٢٨ نوفمبر : واشنطن إلى باريس . يوم الخميس ١ ديسمبر: باريس إلى بروكسل يوم الجمعة ٢ ديسمبر: بروكسل إلى مسقط يوم الاثنين ٥ ديسمبر: مسقط إلى المنامة يوم الثلاثاء ٦ ديسمبر: المنامة إلى الرياض الرياض إلى الكويت يوم الأربعاء ٧ ديسمبر: الكويت إلى واشنطن

Exercise 6

There are many possible sentences. See the examples below the tables.

to try/attempt	حاول/يحاول
to take up (time)/to last	إِسْتَغْرَقَ/يَسْتَغْرق
to take care	اِنْتَبَهَ/يَنْتَبه
to take off (aeroplane)	أقلع/يُقلعَ
to fall/drop down	سقط/يسقُط
to move off/set out	إِنْطَلَقَ / يَنْطَلِق
tó approach/come close (to)	اَقْتَرَبَ/يَقْتَرب

Exercise 8

٦ اِنْكَسَرَ/اِنْكِسار	١ إِجْتَمَعَ/إِجْتِهاع
٧ اِقْتَرَبَ/اِقْتِراب	٢ اِنْتَبَهَ/اِنْتِبَاهُ
 ٨ اِنْطَلَقَ / اِنْطِلاق 	٣ اِسْتَغْرَقَ/اِسْتِغْرَاق
٩ نَظَّفَ/تَنْظِيف	٤ حَاوَلَ/مُحَاوَلَة
١٠ صَلَّحَ/تَصْلِيح	٥ أَسْلَمَ/إِسْلام

Exercise 9

meaning	noun	verb	root	form
to set off	إنْطِلاق	اِنْطَلَقَ / يَنْطَلِق	ط/ل/ق	VII
to take care	إنْتِبَاه	اِنْتَبَهَ/يَنْتَبِه	ن/ب/ه	VIII
to try	مُحاوَلة	حَاوَلَ / يُحاوَل	ح/و/ل	Ш
to last	إسْتِغْراق	إِسْتَغْرَقَ/يَسْتَغْرق	ے غ/ر/ق	X
to take off	إِقْلاع	أَقْلَعَ/يُقْلِع	ے ق/ل/ع	IV
to approach	ٳڡ۠ۨؾؚڔٳٮ	ٳق۠ؾۘۯ <u>ۘ</u> ڔؘؘۘؽڡ۠ٛٛڗؖٮ	ق/ر/ب ق/ر/ب	VIII
to fall	سُقوط	سقط/يسقُط	س/ق/ط	I

Chapter 20

Exercise 1

- 0 ونصف كيلو جبنة بيضاء من فضلك ... كم الحساب ؟
 - 🍸 صباح النور ياسيّدي ... تحت أمرك .
 - كَي تفضّل .
- 📆 أعْطني من فضلك كيس سكّر وزجاجة (علبة) عصير تفاح .
 - 🚺 صباح الخير .
 - ٨ الله يسلمك .
 - ٦ ثلاثة جنيهات من فضلك .
 - ∨ تفضّل ... مع السلامة .

Exercise 2

Your conversation should be similar to this:

- ـ يا جرسون ! من فضلك !
 - ـ نعم !
- ـ واحد سلطة طماطم بالبيض ... وبعد ذلك مكرونة بالطماطم والجبنة .
 - تحت أمرك يا سيّدي . والمشروب ؟
 - آخذ _____ من فضلك .
 - تحت أمرك . هل تجرّب حلوياتنا الشهية بعد ذلك ؟
 - نعم . آخذ بعد ذلك _____ .
 - ـ تحت أمرك.

(The bill depends on your choice of sweet and drink.)

اسم المجلّة: المُسْتَقْبَل

تاريخ العدد : ١١ فبراير ١٩٨٩

رقم العدد: ٦٢٥

صفحة المقالة عن أمريكا: ٢٠

كاتب المقالة عن العلاقات الايرانيّة الفرنسيّة: أسعد حيدر

صفحة مقالة عبدالكريم أبو النصر: ١٤

كاتب المقالة في صفحة ٥ : نبيل خوري

موضوع المقالة في صفحة ٤٦ : سينها الرسوم المتحرّكة في الصين .

Exercise 4

- ١ كتب نبيل خورى المقالة في صفحة ٥ .
- ٢ كتب سليم نصار المقالة في صفحة ١٢.
- ٣ كتب عبدالكريم المقالة في صفحة ١٤.
- ٤ كتب مروان المهايني المقالة في صفحة ١٩.
 - ٥ كتب باسم المعلم المقالة في صفحة ٢٠.
 - ٦ كتب نبيل خليفة المقالة في صفحة ٢٢.
- ٧ كتب عبدالحميد الأحدب المقالة في صفحة ٢٥.
 - ٨ كتب عفيف سالم المقالة في صفحة ٢٦.
 - ٩ كتب أسعد حيدر المقالة في صفحة ٢٨.
 - ١٠ كتب نبيل مسعد المقالة في صفحة ٤٦.
 - ١١ كتب فادي الخوري المقالة في صفحة ٥٤ .
 - ١٢ كتب يوسف العقيد المقالة في صفحة ٦٦.

Exercise 5

۱۱ دُرو <i>س</i>	٦ مَكاتِب	بُيوت	
۱۲ سُبُل	٧ قِطارات	بِحار	۲
۱۳ مَتاحف	٨ مُمَثِّلات	وُكَلاء	
١٤ أُطْباق	۹ مُدُن	كُتُب	٤
١٥ أُمَراء	۱۰ مُساعِدون	وُزَراء	٥

Exercise 6

١ كلُّ يوم يعقد الوزير جلسة عمل .

٢ كلُّ يوم تذهب زينب إلى البنك .

٣ غداً سنزور المتحف في وسط المدينة .

٤ أمس نظّفوا الغرف في الفندق .

٥ هل تقابلتُمْ أوّل أمس ؟

٦ الآن تتطوّر دول العالم الثالث.

٧ منذ ثلاث ساعات انطلق الاصدقاء إلى المدينة .

٨ اليوم يجتمع وزراء الاقتصاد في عبّان ويتبادلون الأفكار .

Exercise 7

لم تصلّح نادية درّاجتها المكسورة .

صلَّحَت الكرسيّ المكسور .

غسلت قميص أحمد.

لم تكتب رسالة لأمها.

رتَّبَت اللُّعَب في الخرانة .

طبخت العشاء.

لم تغسل الأطباق.

لم تُخرج الزبالة .

ذهبت إلى البنك.

لم تنظّف المطبخ .

GLOSSARY

345

Exercise 8

لم تصلّحها .
صلَّحَته .
غسلَته .
لم تكتبها .
رُتَّبَتها .
طبخته .
لم تغسلها .
لم تُخرجها .
ذهبَت إليه .
ل تنظَّهٔ م

ENGLISH-ARABIC

GLOSSARY

The following glossary contains all the words you have met in Mastering Arabic.

Note:

- The meanings given are as used in this book. There may be alternative English or Arabic meanings. For these, you will need to use a dictionary.
- Verbs are followed by (to). If a word is not followed by (to), you can presume that it is not a verb.

A

••	
about (a subject etc.)	
above	•
accountant	ب (ون)
actor	(ون)
actress	(ات)
aeroplane	ة (ات)
affair	(شئون)
Africa	ليا
after	
after that	لِك

afternoon	بعْدَ الظُّهْرِ
agency	وكالة (ات)
agent	وَ كيل (وُكَلاء)
agriculture	زرا عة (ات)
aid (e.g. foreign aid)	معونة (ات)
aide	_
all	کُلّ کُلّ کُلّ کُلّ کُلّ کُلّ کُلّ کُلّ
all the best ('with my greetings')	مُساعِد (ون) كُلِّ مَعَ تَحِيّاتي
almonds	ئى: ئە:
alright	لَوْز حَسَناً
ambassador	سَفير (سُفَراء)
America	ئىرىكا أمْرىكا
American	ہمریات اُمْریکتی (ون)
and so	á
apples	۔ تُفّاح اِقْتَرَبَ/يَقْثَرِب اِبْريل عَرَبِيّ (عَرَب)
approach (to)	ى لقْتَ رَيْ / يَقْتَرِ بِ
April	اِئى،
Arab/Arabic	بِبرین ءَ د ّ (ءَ َ د ،)
	عربي (عرب)
Arabic (language)	العَرَبيّة
army	، عربي جَيْشَ (جُيوش)
arrive (to)	بيس (بيوس) مُصَا َ /بصل
artefact	وَصَلَ/يصِل تُحُفْة (تُحَف)
Asia	آ ا
at ('chez')	ا سی من
attempt (to)	آسْیا عِنْدَ حاوَلَ/یُحاوِل

attend (to)	حَضْرَ /یحضر حُضور أَغُسْطُس
attendance	خَض ور عَمْ مَ
August	اغسطس
В	/ 617 \ T
bag/case	حَقيبة (حَقائِب) كيس (أُكْياس)
bag (plastic etc.)	کیس (اکیاس) خَبّاز (ون)
baker	حبار (ون) کُرة (ات)
ball	کره (۱۳) مَوْز
banana(s)	
bank	بَنْك (بُنوك)
be (to)	کان/یکون
beautiful	جَميل ؛ حِلْو
bed	سَرير (أُسِرَّة). يَوْنَ
before	قَبْلَ ءَ ° نَا الْمِيْدِ
before that	قَبْلَ ذٰلِك
begin (to)	بدأ/يبدَأ تَحْتَ
below	
beside	بجانِب أَفْضَل بَيْنَ
better/best	افضل
between	بي ن مَارِّد مِن مِن
bicycle	 دُرّاجة (ات) ــَــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
big	كبير
bill	حِساب
biscuits	<u>ب</u> َسْكُويت
black	أَسْوَد (سَوْداء .fem)

كُرْسيّ (كَراسي)

blue	(form 1 " ° 5	chair	کُرْسيّ (کَراسي)
book	أُزْرَق (زَرْقاء .fem)	chairman/leader	رَئيس (رُؤَساء)
	كِتاب (كُتُب)	chairmanship	رِئاسة (ات)
book (to)	حجز/يحجز		ر َخ يص
bookshop	مَكْتَبة (ات)	cheap	جُبْنة
bottle	زُجاجة (ات)	cheese	
box	عُلْبة (عُلَب)	chemistry	الكيمياء دَجاجة (دَجاج)
boy	وَلَد (أَوْلاد)	chicken	ربيب) الصين
bread		China	
breakfast	اهٔ طل	Chinese	صينيّ (ون)
broken	خُبْز إِفْطار مَكْسور	cigarette	سيجارة (ات)
bronze (adj.)	ؘڔؙۅڹ۠ڒؾۜ	class/lesson	دَرْس (دُروس) مَنَّمَ مِرَّبِّ
bronze (metal)	بروس	clean (to)	نَظُّفَ/يُنَظِّف
burden	بروبر مُا دَامُ ١١)	clear (weather)	<i>ص</i> ُحُو
bus	بروري بَرُونْز حمْل (أَحْمال) أُتوبيس (ات)	clock	ساعة (ات)
but	الوبيس (اف) لكن	cloudy	غائِم
	کچن	coffee	قَهْوة
		coffee beans	بُنّ
C		cola	كولا
cabinet (of ministers)	عَجْلِس (جَحالِس)	cold	بارِد لَوْن (أَلُوان)
cake	َ عَلِّس (مَجالِس) کَعْك	colour	
camel	جَمَل (جِمال)	Common Market (the)	السوق الأروبيّة المُشْتَرَكة
capital (city)	عاصِمةً (عَواصِم)	concerning	عَنْ
car	سَيّارة (ات)	condition	حال (أُحُوال)
carpenter	نَجّار (ون)	conference	مُوْْمَر (ات)
carton	عُلْبةً (عُلَب)	continent	قارّة (ات)
cartoons	رُسوم مُتَحَرِّكة	convene (to)	عقد/يعقِد
	1		

cook cook (to) cooperate (to) cotton (adj.) cotton (cloth) country course (of a meal) court (tennis etc.) cube cubic cultivate (to) culture cup cupboard D daughter day	طَبّاخ (ون) طبخ/يطبُخ تعاوَنَ/يَتعاوَن قُطْني قُطْني قُطْني دُوْلة (دُوَل) دُوْلة (دُوَل) طَبَق/أَطْباق) مُكعَّب (مَلاعِب) مُكعَّب (ات) مُكعَّب (ات) دُرع/يزرَع مُكعَّب نزرع/يزرَع فِنْجان (فَناجين) فَنْجان (فَناجين) مُنْت (بَنات)	delicious democracy depart (to) deputy desk desserts develop (to) dinar dinner dirhem discussions dish do (to) dog donkey door drawing	شَهيّ الديوقْراطيّة غادَرَ/يغادِر نائِب (نُوّاب) نائِب (مَكاتِب) حَلوِيات حَلوِيات دينار (دَنانير) عَشاء درْهَم (دَراهِم) عُخادَثاتِ طَبَق (أطْباق) غلام (كلب) فعل/يفعَل عَمار (حَير) باب (أَبْواب) رَسْم (رُسوم)
	يَّوْم (أَيَّام) بَعْدَ غَد أُوَّل أُمْس	drawing drink (to) drive (to)	رسم (رُسوم) شرب/يشرَب قاد/يقود
dear (opening of letter) December defence defend (to) degree	تَناوَلَ/يَتَناوَل عَزيزي/عَزيزتي ديسَمْبِر دفاع دافَعَ/يُدافِع دَرَجة (ات)	east eat (to) EC economy	شَرْق أكل/يأكُل see Common Market إقْتِصاد (ات)

	education	تَعْليم	F
	eggs	تَعْلیم بَیْض مِصْر مِصْریّ مَانِیة ثَمانِیة	face
	Egypt	مِصْر	factory
	Egyptian	مُصْرِيّ	fall (to)
	eight	ثُمانية	fast
	eighteen	ثُمانية عَشَر	father
	eighty	ثَانين	February
	eject (to)	ثَهانین أُخْرَجَ/یُخْرِج أُحَد عَشَر	fifteen
	eleven	أَحَد عَشَر	fifty
	embassy	سفارة (ات)	figs
	emirate	إُمارة (ات)	film
	engineer	مُ مُنْ دِينِ (و دِن	finally
	England	انْحلْمَ ا	find (to)
	English	انْجلن يّ (انْجلن)	fine (weather)
	English (language)	ليهبوس (ول) إنْجِليزيّ (إِنْجِليز) الإِنْجِليزيّة مَدْخَل (مَداخِل)	firstly
	entrance	مَدْخُا (مَداخار)	
	Europe	ئندس (مندرین) أوروبّا	fish
	evening	مُساء	five
	every	مسء م 'د	flies
	every day	کُلّ کُلّ یَوْم	fly (to)
	exchange (to) (views etc.)	کل یوم شَارُدُ / ـُشَارُدُ	for
	exhibit (to)	بادل /یتبادل	forty
	exhibition	عرض /يعرص	four
	exit	معرض (معارض)	fourteen
		مخرج (مخارِج)	France
	exploration (of a subject etc.)	ص يوم تَبادَلَ /يَتَبادَل عرض/يعرض مَعْرَض (مَعارِض) مَعْرَج (مَخارِج) بَحْث الخارِجيّة	French
•	exterior (the)	الخارجيّة	Friday

face	وَجْه (وُجوه)
	مَصْنَع (مَصانع)
factory	سقط / سـ قُط
fall (to)	ر المنظم
fast	سريع أً دآ ا
father	وَجْه (وُجوه) مَصْنَع (مَصانِع) سقط/يسقُط سَريع أَب (آباء)
February	فبر ایر رَّهُ
fifteen	خمسة عَشر
fifty	خمسين
figs	تين فيلْم (أَفْلام) أُخيراً
film	فِيلم ٍ (افلام)
finally	اخيرا
find (to)	وجد/یجِد مَــْد.
fine (weather)	صغو
firstly	اولا
fish	سَمَك ء •
five	خُسة
flies	ست. ذُباب طار/يطير
fly (to)	طار/يطير
for	اِــ چَوْدِ
forty	اربعين
four	ارْبَعة
fourteen	ارْبَعة عَشر
France	فَرَنْسا
French	فرَنسيّ (ون)
Friday	(يوم) الجمّعة

friend	صاحِب (أَصْحاب) ؛
from	من
future	مُسْتَقْبَل
G	
game	لُعْبة (لُعَب)
general (adj.)	عامّ
geography	لُعْبة (لُعَب) عامّ الجُغْرافِيَا
German	أُلْـهانيّ (ون) أُلْـمانْيا
Germany	أُلْمانْيا
girl	بِنْت (بَنات)
give me	أُعْطِني
glass (adj.)	 زُجا <i>جيّ</i>
glass (material)	 زُجاج
globe	كُرَة (ات)
go (to)	ذهب/يذهَب
go back (to)	ذهب/يذهَب رجع/يرجع ؛ عاد/يعود
go out (to)	خرج/يخُرج
gold (metal)	ذَهَب
gold/golden	ۮؘۿؠؾ
good	فاضِل
good evening	مُساء الخَيْر (مساء النُّور)
good morning	فاضِلَ مَساء الخَيْر (مساء النُّور) صَباح الخَيْر (صباح النُّور)
goodbye ('with safety')	مَعَ السَّلامة أَخْضَر (خَضْراء .fem)
green	أَخْضَر (خَضْراء .fem)

	تست ۱۰۰۰
greeting	تحِيَّة (ات) تَّال ()
grocer	بَقّال (ون) الخَليج
Gulf (the)	الخليج
Н	
half	نِصْف هُ ۔
he	کو دو
head (of company etc.)	رَئيس (رُؤَساء)
health	صِحة
hear (to)	سمع/يسمَع
heart	قَلْب (قُلوب)
heat	خرارة - * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
heat (to)	سَخَّنَ (يُسَخِّن)
heavy	مُ
helper	مُساعِد (ون)
hen	دُجاجة (دُجاج)
her	ها
here you are	تَفَضَّل/تفضَّلي/تفضَّلوا ـهُ
his	
history	تاريخ
hold (to) (of a meeting etc.)	عقد/يعقِد
home	بَیْت (بُیوت)
hospital	مُسْتَشْفًى (مُسْتَشْفَيات)
hot	حا رّ سور ـ
hotel	فُنْدُق (فَنادِق)
hour	ساعة (ات)

house	بَیْت (بیوت)	Italian
how	كَيْفَ	Italy
how are you	۔ کیف حالك	item of
how many	بَيْت (بيوت) كَيْفَ كيف حالك كَـمْ بكَمْ مَائة (ات) زَوْج (أَزْواج)	J
how much	کُدُ	
hundred	ً	Januar
husband	زَدُ و رَأَدُ و الرَّادُ	Japan
		Japane
1		juice
1	اُن	July
ice-cream	OI Ž	June
idea	آیس کَریم فِکْرَة (أَفکُار) هامّ فِی اَمامَ فِی وَسَط	justice
important	فِکرہ (افکار)	К
in	هام	
in front of	ڡۣ	key
in the middle of	امام . ـ ـ ـ	kilo
increase (an)	في وسط	king
increase (to)	زِيادة (ات)	L
industry	زاد/يزيد	laune
inspector	صِناعة (ات)	lead
interior (the)	مُفَتِّش (ون)	lead
, ,	الداخِلِيّة	lead
investigation	تحقيق (ات) العِراق	
Iraq	العِراق	leav
Iraqi	عِراقيّ (ون) هِيَ هُوَ	Leb
it (fem.)	ۿؚۑؘ	Leb
it (masc.)	هُوَ هُوَ	less

Italian Italy item of news (Pl. = news)	إيطاليّ (ون) إيطَالْيَا خَبَر (أُخْبار)
J January Japan Japanese juice July June justice	يَنايِر اليابان يابانيّ (ون) عَصير يولِيو يونِيو عَدْل
key kilo king	مِفْتاح (مَفاتیح) کیلو مَلِك (مُلوك)
L laundry/launderette lead (to) leader leadership leave (to) Lebanese Lebanon lesson	مَغْسَلة (مَغاسِل) قاد/يقود زَعيم (زُعَهاء) زِعامة غادرَ/يُغادِر لُبْنانيّ (ون) لُبْنان دَرْس (دُروس)

letter	خِطاب (ات) ؛ رِسالة (رَسائِل)
library	َ ِكَ بَ رَحَّ مَ رُوَّ مِنْ مَكْتَبَة (ات)
Libya	انا ا
Libyan	سبب ا ت (م:)
light (for weight)	ليبيّ (ون)
lira (pound)	خفیف
list	ليرة (ات)
long	قائِمة (قُوائِم)
lunch	طُويل
	غَداء
M	

macaroni	مَكَر و نة
madam	
magazine	مدرم مَاّت دا د)
man	مُجَلَّة (ات) مُعَمَّد
mangos	رَجُل (رِجال)
many	منجة
March	كثير
	مارْس ِ
market	سوق (أُسْواق)
masterpiece	تُحْفة (تُحَف)
mathematics	ال ياضيّات
matter	َ رَبُّ وَ نَ) شَــان (شُهُ و ن)
May	(03947, 044

means (of doing something)

	,
meat	لحم .
medal	مِيدَالْية (ات)
meet (to)	إجْتَمَعَ/يَجْتَمِع ؛ تَقابَلَ/يَتَقابَل
meeting	اِجْتِهاع (ات) صَلَّحَ/يُصَلِّح
mend (to)	صَلِحَ/يُصَلح
Middle East	الشَّرْق الأوْسَط
mild	مُعْتَدِل
military	عُسْكريّ
milk	ِ خلیب °
million	مَلْيون (مَلايِين)
minister	وَزير (وُزرَاء)
ministry	وِزارة (ات)
minute	دَقيقة (دَقائِق)
moderate	مُعْتَدِل
Monday	َ بَوْمَ) الاِثْنَيْن شَهْر (أَشْهُر)
month	شهْر (أشهُر)
morning	صَباح مَسْــجِد (مَساجِد) أُمّ (أُمَّهات)
mosque	مُسْــجِد (مُساجِد)
mother	امِّ (امّهات)
mountain	جَبَل (جبال)
move off (to)	اِنْطَلَقَ /َيَنْطَلِق موسيقَى
music	موسيقى
N	
name	إِسْم (أُسْباء)
nation	دَوْلة (دُوَل)

nationality	جنْسيّة (ات)
it is necessary that	جِنْسِيّة (ات) لَا بُدّ أَن
new	
news	جَديد أُخْبار
newspaper	
nine	تِسْعة
nineteen	جَريدة (جَرائِد) تِسْعة تِسْعَة عَشَر
ninety	ئىسىغىد ئىسىر تىسىغىين ظُهْر
noon	ظُهْر
north	شِيال
November	ب شِمال نوفَمْپر
now	اَلآن
number (numeral)	اَلآن رَقْم (أَرْقام) عَدَد (أَعْداد)
number (quantity)	عَدَد (أُعْداد)
nurse	مُمَرِّضة (ات)
О	
O (used before name etc.)	اِ
October	أُكْتوبِر مَكْتَب (مَكاتِب) زَيْت (زُيوت)
office	مَكْتَب (مَكاتب)
oil	زَ یْت (زُیوت)
old (of things)	قَديم
old (of people)	ریت (ریوت) قَدیم کَبیر (السِّنّ)
Oman	بيع عُمان عُمانيّ (ون)
Omani	عُمانيّ (ون)
on	عَلَى

on the left of	عَلِي يَسار
on the right of	عَلَىٰ يَمِين
one	واجِد رُ
open (adj.)	مَّفْتَوح فتح/يفتَح اِفْتَتَحَ/يَفْتَتِح
open (to)	فتح/یفتح
open (to) (of a new building etc.)	اِفتتح/یفتتِح
opening ceremony	اِفْتِتاح (ات) بُرْتُقال بُرْتُقال
oranges	برتفال نا
our	
overcast (weather)	غائِم
P	
	عُلْبة (عُلَب)
packet	قَصْر (قُصور)
palace	دَ ْ كَمَانِ (ات)
parliament	بر عرب (حِزْبِ (أَحْزابِ)
party (political)	َ قَلَم (أَقْلام) قَلَم (أَقْلام)
pen	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
period (of time)	فَتْرَة (فَتَرات)
picture	صُورة (صُور)
piece	قِطْعة (قِطَع)
pigeons	خمام - مام
pitch (football etc.)	ملعب (ملاعِب)
plate	طَبَق (أَطْباق)
play (to)	لعب/يلعَب
playing field	مَلْعَب (مَلاعِب) مِنْ فَضْلك (فَضْلكُم)
please	مِن فضلك (فضلكم)

	5 5 5
please (come in, take it etc.)	تَفَضَّل/تَفَضَّلي/تَفَضَّلوا
poor	فَقير بَطاطا
potatoes	بَطاطا
pound (money)	جُنَيْه (ات) ؛ ليرة (ات)
prepare (to)	جَهَّزَ/ي ُج َهِّز
presidency	رئاسة (ات)
president	رَّئيس (رُّؤَساء)
price	سِعْر (أَسْعار)
prince	أُمير (أُمَراء)
profession	مِهْنة (مِهَن)
programme	بَرْنَامَج (بَرامِج)
put on (to) (for clothes etc.)	لـبس/يلبَس
put out (to) (rubbish etc.)	أَخْرَجَ /ِيُخْرِج
pyramid	هَرَم (أُهْرام)
Q	
quarter	رُبْع (أُرْباع)
R	
receive (to) (guests etc.)	ٳڛ۠ؾؘڨ۫ڹۘڶ/يؘڛ۠ؾؘڨ۠ڹؚڶ
reception	اِسْتِقْبالَ (ات)
rectangle	مُّسْتَطيل (ات)
rectangular	مُسْتَطيل
red	أُهُر (خَراء .fem)
religious education	الَترْبِية الدينِيّة
reserve (to)	حجز ً يحجِز

restaurant	مَطْعَم (مَطاعِم)
return (to)	رجع/يرجِع ؛ عاد/يعود أَرُزِّ
rice	أُرُزّ
rich	غني
ring	غنيّ خاتِم (خَواتِم) َ ْ ْ َ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ ْ
river	نهر (انهر)
riyal	رِيال (ات)
robbery	سُرقة (ات)
rose	وَرُّدة (وَرْد)
round (of talks etc.)	جَوْلة (ات)
royal	مَلَكيّ
rubber (adj.)	مَطاطيّ
rubber (material)	مطاط
Russia	روسِيا
Russian	روسيّ (روس)
S	
	سَلَطة (ات)
salad	(يَوْم) السَّبْت
Saturday	1
Saudi (Arabia)	السَّعودِيَّة
Saudi (nationality)	سَعوديّ (ون)
say (to)	قال/يقول
school	مَدْرَسة (مَدارِس)
sea	بَحْر (بِحار) يَبْدو أَن
it seems that	يَبْدُو أَن
September	سَبْتَمْبِر

service	خِدْمَة (ات)
at your service	تَحْتَ أَمْرِك
session	جَلْسَة (ات)
set out (to)	إِنْطَلَقَ / يَنْطَلِق
seven	سَبْعَة
seventeen	سَبْعَة عَشَر
seventy	سَبْعِين
shampoo	شامبو
shape	سَـبر شَـكُل (أَشْكال)
she	هِیَ
sheikh	شَيْخ (شُيوخ)
shirt	قَميص (أُقْمِصة ؛ قُمْصان)
short	قَصير
show (e.g. art show)	مَعْرَض (مَعارض)
show (to)	مَعْرَض (مَعارِض) عرض/يعرِض
silk	- حَرير
silken	ح ريريّ
silver (adj.)	فِضَیّ
silver (metal)	فِضّة
since (as in 'since 1982')	مُنذُ
sir	سَیِّدی
sister	أُخْت (أَخَوات)
sit down (to)	جلس/يجلِس
six	سِتّة
sixteen	سِنَّة عَشَر
sixty	سِتِّين
	· /

small	صَغير
so	فَ
soap	صابون
son	اِبْن (أَبْناء)
south	جَنوب
spaghetti	مَكَرونة
Spain	إسْبانيا
Spanish	إِسْبانيّ (ون)
sphere	كُرة (ات)
sport	رياضة
square	ر. مُرَبِّع (ات)
state (condition)	حال (أُحُوال)
state (country)	دَوْلة (دُوَل)
street	شارِع (شَوارِع)
strong	قَوِيّ
study (to)	درس/یدرُس
Sudan	السودان
Sudanese	سودانيّ (ون) سُكَّر
sugar	سُگُر
suit (to)/be suitable	لاءَمَ (يُلاثِم) مُردة -
suitability	ملائمة
Sunday	(يَوْم) الْأَحَد
•	عَشاء
supper	حُلْق
sweet	سَيْف (سُيوف)
sword	

Syria	سورية (سوريا also)
Syrian	سوريّ (ون)
T	
table	مائِدة (مَوائِد)
take (to)	أخذُ/يأخُذ
take care (to)	اِنْتَبَهَ/يَنْتَبه
take off (to) (of aeroplane etc.)	ٳڹ۠ؾۘڹۘۿ/يؘڹ۠ؾۘڹؚؚؚه ٲؙۛۊ۠ۘڶۼ/يؙڨ۠ڶؚۼ
take up (to) (of time etc.)	رسَّعُ رُيِّرِي اِسْتَغْرَقَ/يَسْتَغْرِق
talks	مُحادَثات
tall (for people)	طَويل
tea	شاي
teach (to)	شا <i>ي</i> دَرَّسَ /يُدَرِّس
teacher	مُدَرِّس (ون)
telephone	تِليفُون (ات)
television	تِليفِزْيون (ات)
temperature	دَرَجة الحَرارة
ten	عَشَرَة
tent	خَيْمَة (خِيام)
thank you	شُكْراً
theft	سَرقة (ات)
their (dual)	Lå
their (fem.)	ـهُـا ـهُنَّ
their (masc.)	څم
then	ثُمَّ
there is/are	هُناك

there is not/are not	لَيْسَ هُناكَ
	هٰذه
these (for non-humans)	هٰذِه هٰؤُلاءِ هُما
these (for people)	موه ءِ م م ا
they (dual)	هي هن
they (fem.)	هن م
they (masc.)	هم • س .ځ
thief	لِصٌّ (لُصوص) ثُلْث (أثْلاث)
third	تلث (اثلاث)
thirteen	ثَلاثة عَشَر
thirty	ثَلاثین
this (fem.)	ۿ۫ۮؚۄ
this (masc.)	هٰ ذا * ء •
thought	فِكْرة (أَفْكار)
three	ثُلاثة
Thursday	(يَوْم) الخَميس
time	وَقْت (أُوْقات)
tin (of beans etc.)	عُلْبة (عُلَب)
to	إِلَىٰ ؛ ك
today	الِيَوْم
tomatoes	طَماطِم غَد
tomorrow	
tooth	سِنّ (أُسْنانٍ)
toothpaste	مَعْجون الأَسْنان
total	مِنْ (استان) مَعْجون الأَسْنان مَجْموع
tour	جُوْلة (ات)
towards	إِلَى

town	مَدينة (مُدُن)
toy	مدينه (مدن) لُعْبة (لُعَب)
train	تعبه (بعب) قطار (ات)
tree	َیْکَور (۱۰) شَجَرة (شجَر)
triangle	مُثَلَّث (ات)
triangular	م مُثانث
try (to)	حسب حاوَلَ /یُحاوِل أَنْ تَدَرُّنَا مِ
tube	قول ريون أُنْبوبة (أُنابيب)
Tuesday	(يَوْم) الثُّلاثاء
twelve	اثنا عَشَر
twenty	اِثْنا عُشَر عِشْرین اِثْنانِ
two	ِ اثنان
U	2 -
ugly	قَىح
United States (The)	ً . يي اله لايات الْتُعَدة
until	قبيح الوِلايات المُتَّحِدة حَـــتَّ
\mathbf{v}	G
vice (president)	نائِب (نُوّاب)
visit	زِيارة (ات)
visit (to)	رِیوره ۱۰۰۰ زار/یزور
w	333 3·3
waiter	جَرْسون
wash (to)	برسون غسل/يغسِل
washing powder	مَسْحوق الغَسيل

watch	ساعة (ات) اِنْتَبَهَ/يَنْتَبِه
watch out (to)	اِنْتَبَهَ/يَنْتَبِهِ
water	ماء پ
water melons	بَطَيخ
way	سَبيل (سُبُل)
we	نعن
weak	ضعیف
wear (to)	لبِس/يلبَس ءَ •
weather	طقس
Wednesday	(يَوْم) الارْبَعاء أُسْبوع (أسابيع)
week	اسبوع (اسابيع)
west	غرب
what (+ noun)	ما
what (+ verb)	ماذا
when	متى أَيْنَ عَ
where	این آئی کی د
white	اًبْيَض (بَيْضاء .fem)
whole	سليم د دد
why	لِهاذا
wife	زَوْجة (ات)
wind (fem.)	ریح (رِیاح) گُ" در
window	شُبّاك (شبابيك)
with	مَعَ ؛ بِـ خَشَب
wood	خشب خَشَبيّ
wooden	خشبيّ د از سارت
working session	جلسة عمل

world (the)	العاكم
write (to)	كتب/يكتُب
Y	
year	سِّنة (سِنون)
yellow	سَنة (سِنون) أَصْفَر (صَفْراء .fem)
Yemen	اليَمَن
Yemeni	َيِمَنِيّ (وِن)
yesterday	أِمْس
you (fem. sing.)	اِنْتِ
you (masc. sing.)	أِنْتَ
you (pl.)	أنتُم
young	صَغير (السِنّ)
your (fem. sing.)	كِ
your (masc. sing.)	كُ
your (pl.)	کُم
Z	
zero	صِفْر